



THEORY
into
PRACTICE

An Introduction to Literary Criticism

THIRD EDITION

Ann B. Dobie



Theory into Practice

CENGAGE **brain**.com

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Theory into Practice

An Introduction to Literary Criticism

THIRD EDITION

ANN B. DOBIE

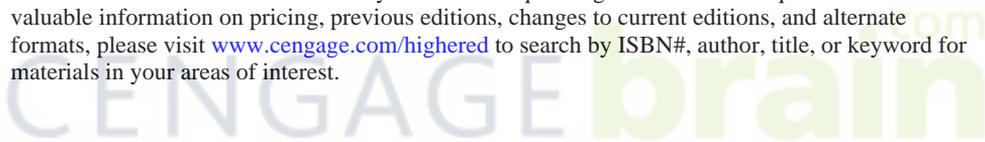
Professor Emerita, University of Louisiana at Lafayette

CENGAGE **brain**.com



WADSWORTH
CENGAGE Learning™

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.





Theory into Practice: An Introduction to Literary Criticism, Third Edition
Ann B. Dobie

Senior Publisher: Lyn Uhl
Publisher: Michael Rosenberg
Development Editor: Jillian D'Urso
Assistant Editor: Erin Bosco
Editorial Assistant: Rebecca Donahue
Media Editor: Janine Tangney
Marketing Director: Christina Shea
Marketing Manager: Melissa Holt
Content Project Management: PreMediaGlobal
Art Director: Marissa Falco
Manufacturing Buyer: Betsy Donaghey
Rights Acquisition Specialist, Image: Jennifer Meyer Dare
Rights Acquisition Specialist, Text: Katie Huha
Production Service: PreMediaGlobal
Cover designer: Len Massiglia
Cover image: Photothèque R. Magritte-ADAGP/Art Resource, NY
Compositor: PreMediaGlobal

© 2012, 2009, 2002 Wadsworth, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706**
For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **cengage.com/permissions**
Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to **permissionrequest@cengage.com**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010938337

ISBN-13: 978-0-495-90233-1

ISBN-10: 0-495-90233-0

Wadsworth
20 Channel Center Street
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at **international.cengage.com/region**.

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your course and learning solutions, visit **www.cengage.com**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **www.cengagebrain.com**.

Instructors: Please visit **login.cengage.com** and log in to access instructor-specific resources.

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



Contents

PREFACE xi
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS xv
TO THE STUDENT: AN INTRODUCTION TO *THEORY INTO PRACTICE* xvii

1 The Relationship of Reading and Writing 1

Reading and Writing in College 1
Engaging the Text 2
 Adding Marginal Notations 3
 Keeping a Reading Log 3
 Using Heuristics 5
Shaping a Response 5
 Determining a Purpose and Understanding Forms of Response 6
 Knowing Your Audience 8
 Choosing a Voice 9
Helping the Process 9
 Collaboration 10
 Reference Materials 12
Summing Up 12
Suggested Reading 12

2 Familiar Approaches 14

Conventional Ways of Reading Literature 14
 A Social Perspective 14

	<i>The Effects of Genre</i>	19
	Conventional Ways of Writing about Literature	23
	<i>Explication</i>	24
	<i>Analysis</i>	24
	<i>Comparison and Contrast</i>	24
	<i>Study of a Single Author's Works</i>	25
	Summing Up	25
	Suggested Reading	26
	Model Student Analysis	27
	<i>"Between Gloom and Splendor: A Historical Analysis of Hawthorne's 'Young Goodman Brown'"</i> by Meghan Harmon	27
3	Formalism	33
	Historical Background	34
	<i>Russian Formalism</i>	35
	<i>Mikhail Bakhtin</i>	36
	Reading as a Formalist	40
	<i>Form</i>	41
	<i>Diction</i>	43
	<i>Unity</i>	45
	<i>What Doesn't Appear in Formalist Criticism</i>	46
	Writing a Formalist Analysis	47
	<i>Prewriting</i>	47
	<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	48
	Suggested Reading	49
	Model Student Analysis	51
	<i>"Robinson's 'Richard Cory' A Formalistic Interpretation"</i> by Frank Perez	51
4	Psychological Criticism	53
	Historical Background	53
	Practicing Psychological Criticism	55
	<i>Freudian Principles</i>	55
	<i>Carl Jung and Mythological Criticism</i>	62
	<i>Northrop Frye and Mythological Criticism</i>	66
	<i>Jacques Lacan: An Update on Freud</i>	67
	Writing Psychological Criticism	72
	<i>Prewriting</i>	72

<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	73
Suggested Reading	76
Model Student Analyses	78
<i>A Mythological Analysis: “Thou Hast Thy Music Too: Loss as Art in John Keats’s ‘To Autumn’” by Meagan Cass</i>	78
<i>A Psychological Analysis: “Power and Desire in Ernest Gaines’s ‘The Sky Is Gray’” by Emily Broussard</i>	81

5 Marxist Criticism 84

Historical Background	84
Reading from a Marxist Perspective	87
<i>Economic Power</i>	87
<i>Materialism versus Spirituality</i>	90
<i>Class Conflict</i>	91
<i>Art, Literature, and Ideologies</i>	92
Writing a Marxist Analysis	95
<i>Prewriting</i>	95
<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	96
Suggested Reading	97
Model Student Analysis	99
<i>“Silence, Violence, and Southern Agrarian Class Conflict in William Faulkner’s ‘Barn Burning’” by Liberty Kohn</i>	99

6 Feminist Criticism 102

Historical Background	103
<i>Feminism</i>	103
<i>Queer Theory</i>	109
Reading as a Feminist	112
<i>Studies of Difference</i>	113
<i>Studies of Power</i>	114
<i>Studies of the Female Experience</i>	117
Writing Feminist Criticism	119
<i>Prewriting</i>	120
<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	121
Suggested Reading	123
Model Student Analysis	125
<i>“The Road from Mother: A Daughter’s Struggle” by Cindy Childress</i>	125

7	Reader-Response Criticism	129
	Historical Background	129
	Making a Reader's Response	132
	<i>Getting Started</i>	132
	<i>Interacting with the Text</i>	132
	Writing a Reader-Response Analysis	138
	<i>Prewriting</i>	138
	<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	140
	Suggested Reading	141
	Model Student Analysis	143
	<i>"Discovering the Way the World Works: A Reader-Response Analysis of James Joyce's 'Araby'" by Michael Jauchen</i>	143
8	Deconstruction	149
	Historical Background	149
	Structuralism	151
	<i>Ferdinand de Saussure</i>	152
	<i>Claude Lévi-Strauss</i>	155
	<i>Roland Barthes</i>	156
	<i>Vladimir Propp</i>	156
	<i>Jonathan Culler</i>	157
	Practicing Deconstruction	158
	Making a Deconstructive Analysis	162
	Writing a Deconstructive Analysis	167
	<i>Prewriting</i>	168
	<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	169
	Suggested Reading	171
	Model Student Analysis	172
	<i>"The Blame Game" by Katherine Meister</i>	172
9	Cultural Studies: New Historicism	175
	An Overview of Cultural Studies	176
	Assumptions, Principles, and Goals of New Historicism	177
	<i>Traditional Historicism</i>	178
	<i>New Historicism</i>	178
	<i>New Literary Historicism</i>	181
	Historical Background	183
	Reading as a New Historicist	187

<i>The World of the Author and the Text</i>	187
<i>Discourses in the Text</i>	190
<i>Intentions and Reception</i>	192
Writing a New Historicist Literary Analysis	193
<i>Prewriting</i>	193
<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	194
Suggested Reading	197
Model Student Analysis	199
<i>“The Economics of Paranoia in Nadine Gordimer’s ‘Once Upon a Time’”</i> by Kyle Felker	199

10 More Cultural Studies: Postcolonialism and Multiculturalism 204

Postcolonialism	204
<i>Historical Background</i>	205
<i>Basic Assumptions</i>	208
<i>Reading as a Postcolonialist</i>	209
U.S. Multiculturalism	217
<i>African American Literature</i>	217
<i>Reading as a Multiculturalist</i>	220
Writing a Cultural Studies Analysis	226
Suggested Reading	227
Model Student Analyses	228
<i>“Victims Already: Violence and Threat in Nadine Gordimer’s ‘Once Upon a Time’”</i> by Ric Johna	228
<i>“Langston Hughes and the Dream of America”</i> by Wiley Cash	233

11 Ecocriticism: Literature Goes Green 239

What Is It?	239
Historical Background	241
Getting Started as an Ecocritic	243
<i>Selecting a Text</i>	243
<i>Choosing an Approach</i>	243
Writing Ecocriticism	248
<i>Prewriting</i>	248
<i>Drafting and Revising</i>	249
Suggested Reading	250

Model Student Analysis 251

“*The Function of Nature in Keats’s ‘To Autumn’*” by Roxie
James 251

LITERARY SELECTIONS 253

INFORMATION AT A GLANCE 343

GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN LITERARY CRITICISM 346

INDEX 361

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Preface

PURPOSE OF *THEORY INTO PRACTICE*

Practicing literary criticism used to be easier. Not too many years ago it involved working from three or four established perspectives, all of them well within a student's (and a teacher's) intellectual comfort zone. Then the ground shifted, and one difficult to grasp literary theory followed another in quick succession, each one demanding difficult mental gymnastics and many of them seeming to be only vaguely related to literature as readers had known it. When it became clear that the emerging theories were here to stay and the literary world was not going to return to its traditional ways of reading and understanding, it also became evident that students were going to need some strong support in learning how to use the new ideas. That recognition led to the appearance of the first edition of *Theory into Practice*. Its purpose was to provide clear explanations of complex theoretical material in a manner that did not corrupt the original ideas by over simplifying them. It tried to honor the principles of each critical theory while making it possible for novice critics to understand and use them.

Subsequent editions of *Theory into Practice* have continued to honor that original intent, at the same time taking note of newly emerging theories and expanding discussions that have proved to be of particular interest to students and teachers. The current edition, for example, features a new chapter on one of literary criticism's newest approaches: ecocriticism. It also features a greatly expanded general glossary and extended attention to some figures who were noted but less than fully developed in the second edition.

ORGANIZATION

The presentation of material in *Theory into Practice* moves from the simple to the complex. That is, it begins with critical approaches that are relatively well known

and easily practiced, then introduces more complex, less familiar perspectives. In each case the historical background is explained, special terms are defined, and principles are exemplified by reference to one of the fifteen literary selections included in the text. A student essay serves as a model of how an analysis should appear. Such support allows students to grow more confident in their ability to understand and use new ways of reading and understanding poems and stories. To further reduce their anxieties, the language of the text is relatively informal and engaging. In short, the presentation is designed to be user-friendly.

PEDAGOGICAL AIDS AND FEATURES

From the beginning, this book has been a “teaching text.” That is, it has included numerous pedagogical aids. The third edition expands those features in an effort to facilitate student use. The following assistance is provided for each school of criticism:

- Concise historical literary background
- Guidelines for reading as a critic
- Guidelines for writing each stage of a critical analysis
- A list of helpful suggested readings
- Access to a comprehensive list of Web sites
- At least one model student essay
- Lists of questions to assist student thinking

In addition, several more comprehensive pedagogical aids follow the explanatory chapters. They include the following:

- Fifteen literary selections for quick and easy reference
- A comprehensive, fully articulated glossary of critical terms
- Information at a Glance, a succinct summary of the purposes, assumptions, strategies, strengths and weaknesses of each approach

NEW TO THIS EDITION

The third edition of *Theory into Practice* includes several significant additions and expansions. The following are of particular interest:

- A new chapter on one of the newest critical perspectives. Called “Literature Goes Green,” it addresses the emerging field of ecocriticism. More specifically, it includes historical background to the movement, explains its purpose and principles, offers suggestions for how to read and write as an ecocritic,

provides a glossary of common terms, and supplies a model student ecocritical essay of a literary work.

- A substantially expanded glossary. In place of the succinct glossaries that have heretofore been included in each chapter, this edition will offer a comprehensive glossary for the field of criticism that not only defines an increased number of terms but also offers more probing discussions for students who want greater depth of examination.
- An extended exploration of structuralism. Chapter 8 now carries new discussion of the ideas and work of Claude Lévi-Strauss, Roland Barthes, Vladimir Propp, and Jonathan Culler that helps make the principles of deconstruction more approachable.
- A new section on Mikhail Bakhtin. Although Bakhtin was mentioned in the second edition, his place in literary criticism was not thoroughly examined. In the current edition, some of his major principles, such as dialogism, heteroglossia, and polyphony are explored in depth in Chapter 3.
- Four new model student essays. New analyses for the psychological, mythological, new historicist, and ecocritical approaches have been included. They offer exemplary guidance to students who will write their own essays.
- Additional expansions and clarifications. For example, the place of the Russian formalists in literary criticism is examined in greater detail. Also, the principles of Lacanian psychology have been updated.

CENGAGE **brain**.com

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Acknowledgments

I am fortunate to have had help from many quarters in writing this book. Chief among them are my students, for whom and from whom I have learned more than I can measure. They have always been some of my most effective teachers. I am also grateful for the honest and helpful responses of my colleagues to what and how I wrote. In particular, I thank Judy Gentry, Duane Blumberg, Patricia Rickels, and Mary Ann Wilson for reading parts of the text and advising me on matters about which they know far more than I. Reviewers of the second edition also helped to shape much of what appears here: Jolanta Wawrzycka, Radford University; Lisa Schwerdt, California University of Pennsylvania; Steve Holder, Central Michigan University; and Tracie Church Guzzio, SUNY Plattsburgh. Their experience in using the book in their own classrooms allowed them to make constructive suggestions that led to a richer, more comprehensive version of the text. The Wadsworth staff assured that the production process went smoothly. I am especially indebted to my editor, Jill D'Urso, who has been of incalculable assistance at every step of revision. Finally, to my friends, who have listened patiently to accounts of the progress of my writing, I owe hours of reciprocal listening. And to my husband I give thanks for his unflinching encouragement and support.

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com



To The Student: An Introduction to *Theory into Practice*

If you are a person who reads on your own for pleasure or for information, you probably are in the habit of talking with other readers about what you find interesting. You share the questions a book raised for you, compare it with other works by the same writer, and reminisce about what it made you recall from your own experience. The discussion is probably informal, spontaneous, and momentary. You may not even remember it a couple of days later.

Theory into Practice: An Introduction to Literary Criticism invites you to join a similar conversation, the main difference being that it will be more thoughtful, prepared, and memorable than the casual one just described. If those seem like intimidating terms, a look at the table of contents will reassure you that this work begins with critical approaches that are not far removed from the friendly conversation mentioned earlier. The first few chapters ask you to engage in forms of literary talk with which you are probably already comfortable. As your critical skills improve, you will be introduced to newer, and probably less familiar, schools of criticism.

The new approaches have appeared as part of a dramatic shift that has taken place in literary criticism over the past several decades. In a college literature class not too long ago, you would probably have been expected to read with either a biographical, historical, or formalist approach—the critical perspectives covered in the opening chapters of *Theory into Practice*—but the situation is dramatically different today. The forms of criticism available to (and expected of) a good reader have grown more complex, and sometimes a bit troubling. They have certainly grown more numerous. Some fundamental assumptions and practices regarding the reader's role have changed with them, making your job as student

and critic less easily defined and prescribed than it once was. Consider how the following changes have redefined your responsibilities.

The literary canon, once accepted as a fixed cultural heritage to be passed down from one generation to another, is no longer a stable body of texts that all readers agree upon. Instead, it is now a conflicted, disputed set of materials that stay in flux. The “masterworks” have been challenged by others drawn from popular culture, and serious attention is paid to materials that once were not deemed worthy of study in higher education. Now that the canon of masterworks is no longer accepted as such, it is up to you to decide what a masterful text is after all and to which ones you would award that label.

Teachers, too, have changed, or at least some of them have. Once regarded as dispensers of knowledge and wisdom through the medium of the class lecture, they relieved the student of having to do much more than take down what was said, remember it, and demonstrate on occasion an understanding of it. The premise was that the teacher had the answer, and the student would learn it. Many effective classrooms operated under that system, for decades producing well-educated people who were good critical readers. Some still do, but today, most teachers acknowledge that with the multiplicity of readings provided by the numerous critical approaches, no single interpretation will suffice. Competing systems of inquiry create differing and sometimes conflicting understandings of any given work, and those disagreements, as Gerald Graff argued in *Beyond the Culture Wars*, can provide healthy debate that makes us better readers and critics. In short, in many of today’s classrooms, you are not expected to be the passive receptor of information or experience. Instead, you are required to assume the role of coparticipant in the making of a text. As a good reader, you cannot remain a silent partner in the conversation about a text, because what you have to say about it helps to create it.

Another influence on current literary criticism is the sheer volume of information that is readily available on any subject. The amount of data that can be found on the Internet alone is almost overwhelming. Its effects on literary study are apparent in critics’ frequent use of material that is drawn from nonliterary sources. In many of the newer approaches, it is not enough to identify metaphors or rhyme schemes in a poem. Now you may be expected to use ideas from anthropology, sociology, or economics to explain what it means. The cross-disciplinary demands of today’s critical approaches ask you to use everything you know—and more.

Perhaps the most demanding aspect of the reader’s new role, but also probably the most important, is that you are put in the position of questioning basic assumptions about everything, not just literature. You may find that task to be a disquieting one, because reading to affirm what we already know and accept is certainly a more comfortable position to be in. However, much of the vitality of the new approaches comes from the fact that they closely connect literature with our lives. They do so by making us look hard at what we often take for granted to see if it is valid, justifiable, and true. They make us examine values and practices that are so much a part of our lives that they exist, most of the time, beyond our questioning and evaluation.

Such practices are not universally accepted or approved. There have been some powerful voices raised in opposition. Allan Bloom in *The Closing of the American Mind*, for example, argued strongly against changes in the traditional curriculum, objecting to the inclusion of studies of popular culture and its products, which he saw as a less rigorous and significant body of subject matter than that which has been the staple of college curricula for several decades. Other detractors have objected to the political edge that many of the current critical perspectives have developed. Those who make such protests deny the validity of treating poetry or fiction as political documents that critique the complex relations among people living in society, examine social power and leadership, reveal the shortcomings of a society, promote the agendas of reformists, or serve to publicize an ignored minority. They ask, “Whatever happened to literature as art, aesthetics, timeless beauty? Doesn’t looking at a text from a political point of view demean its existence? Doesn’t literature transcend the transience of political concerns?”

Two counterarguments are commonly used to justify the political aspect of today’s literary criticism. Those critics who espouse the first agree with George Orwell’s assertion that “no book is genuinely free from political bias. The opinion that art should have nothing to do with politics is itself a political attitude.” Simply put, there is no escaping politics. It is present in every assumption made about the social order, even when nothing explicitly labeled as political is being addressed.

The second justification points out that our culture is not a homogeneous one and that numerous minorities are no longer willing to pretend that it is. Previously silent voices are now calling for new definitions of cultural identity, celebrating their uniqueness and refusing to deny their own backgrounds by blending in with the rest. Their efforts are as influential in literature as in life; in both arenas, they have ramifications that are political in nature. In the case of literature, their stand has led to new readings of both contemporary and traditional works and to recognition of previously overlooked writers.

Clearly the conversation about literature to which this book invites you is not a simple one. It is fraught with conflicts and disagreement. It questions traditional assumptions and practices. It requires you to evaluate what is and to reflect on what you think should be. You will not agree with everything that is said in the discussions; you will not agree on all points with fellow students or even your instructor. The resulting dissonance is expected and justifiable because intellectual engagement, not consensus, is the purpose. Your responsibility is to try out the techniques presented here so that you can make your own informed judgments about literature, literary criticism, and the world beyond them.

To play a competent part in any conversation requires being able to use the language in which it occurs with skill and effectiveness. To talk about literature means knowing the language of criticism. *Theory into Practice* is designed to help you understand that language, or languages, because each critical perspective has its own manner of speaking and writing. This text is, then, more than simply an invitation. It is a guide that will help you move from familiar conversations to others that may challenge your traditional ways of thinking. For each approach,

it will give you historical background, explanations of basic principles, extensive examples, suggestions for writing your analysis, a model student essay, and lists for further reading. A collection of well-known poems and stories, even a memoir and part of a famous correspondence, is included for your reading pleasure, as well as to serve as objects of analysis. Every analytical essay in *Theory into Practice* addresses a literary work that appears in it, making it simple for you to refer to the literary work as you read an analysis. Several of the works are analyzed from more than a single perspective, thereby demonstrating how differing critical approaches influence the work's effect on the reader. At the end, in "Information at a Glance," you will find brief statements about purposes, assumptions, strategies, strengths, and weaknesses of each approach. A glossary of literary terms is also included at the back of the book, for your reference.

As you make your way through the schools of criticism discussed here, you will be dealing with complex ways of reading, analyzing, and interpreting literature that ask you to think long and deeply. If you approach them with a willingness to master their basic principles, to apply their strategies, and to make informed choices about their validity and effectiveness, they will help you discover the inexhaustible richness of reading critically. You are urged to make use of all the help *Theory into Practice* offers as you join the critical conversation.

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Literary Selections

Chapter 6

Letters of Abigail and John Adams

Reprinted by permission of the publisher from The Adams Papers: Adams Family Correspondence, Volume 1, edited by L. H. Butterfield, Cambridge, Mass. The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press. Copyright © 1963 by the Massachusetts Historical Society.

Abigail Adams

March 31, 1776

I wish you would ever write me a letter half as long as I write you, and tell me, if you may, where your fleet are gone; what sort of defense Virginia can make against our common enemy; whether it is so situated as to make an able defense. Are not the gentry lords, and the common people vassals? Are they not like the uncivilized vassals Britain represents us to be? I hope their riflemen, who have shown themselves very savage and even blood-thirsty, are not a specimen of the generality of the people. I am willing to allow the colony great merit for having produced a Washington; but they have been shamefully duped by a Dunmore.

I have sometimes been ready to think that the passion for liberty cannot be equally strong in the breasts of those who have been accustomed to deprive their fellow-creatures of theirs. Of this I am certain, that it is not founded upon that generous and Christian principle of doing to others as we would that others should do unto us.

Do not you want to see Boston? I am fearful of the small-pox, or I should have been in before this time. I got Mr. Crane to go to our house and see what state it was in. I find it has been occupied by one of the doctors of a regiment; very dirty, but no other damage has been done to it. The few things which were left in it are all gone. I look upon it as a new acquisition of property—a property

which one month ago I did not value at a single shilling, and would with pleasure have seen it in flames.

The town in general is left in a better state than we expected; more owing to a precipitate flight than any regard to the inhabitants; though some individuals discovered a sense of honor and justice, and have left the rent of the houses in which they were, for the owners, and the furniture unhurt, or, if damaged, sufficient to make it good. Others have committed abominable ravages. The mansion-house of your President is safe, and the furniture unhurt; while the house and furniture of the Solicitor General have fallen a prey to their own merciless party. Surely the very fiends feel a reverential awe for virtue and patriotism, whilst they detest the parricide and traitor.

I feel very differently at the approach of spring from what I did a month ago. We knew not then whether we could plant or sow with safety, whether where we had tilled we could reap the fruits of our own industry, whether we could rest in our own cottages or whether we should be driven from the seacoast to seek shelter in the wilderness; but now we feel a temporary peace, and the poor fugitives are returning to their deserted habitations.

Though we felicitate ourselves, we sympathize with those who are trembling lest the lot of Boston should be theirs. But they cannot be in similar circumstances unless pusillanimity and cowardice should take possession of them. They have time and warning given them to see the evil and shun it.

I long to hear that you have declared an independency. And, by the way, in the new code of laws which I suppose it will be necessary for you to make, I desire you would remember the ladies and be more generous and favorable to them than your ancestors. Do not put such unlimited power into the hands of the husbands. Remember, all men would be tyrants if they could. If particular care and attention is not paid to the ladies, we are determined to foment a rebellion, and will not hold ourselves bound by any laws in which we have no voice or representation.

That your sex are naturally tyrannical is a truth so thoroughly established as to admit of no dispute; but such of you as wish to be happy willingly give up the harsh title of master for the more tender and endearing one of friend. Why, then, not put it out of the power of the vicious and the lawless to use us with cruelty and indignity with impunity? Men of sense in all ages abhor those customs which treat us only as the vassals of your sex; regard us then as beings placed by Providence under your protection, and in imitation of the Supreme Being make use of that power only for our happiness.

Abigail Adams

April 5, 1776

I want to hear much oftener from you than I do. March 8th was the last date of any that I have yet had. You inquire of me whether I am making saltpetre. I have not yet attempted it, but after soap-making believe I shall make the experiment. I find as much as I can do to manufacture clothing for my family, which would else be naked. I know of but one person in this part of the town who has made any. That is Mr. Tertius Bass, as he is called, who has got very near a

hundred-weight which has been found to be very good. I have heard of some others in the other parishes. Mr. Reed, of Weymouth, has been applied to, to go to Andover to the mills which are now at work, and he has gone.

I have lately seen a small manuscript describing the proportions of the various sorts of powder fit for cannon, small-arms, and pistols. If it would be of any service your way I will get it transcribed and send it to you. Every one of your friends sends regards, and all the little ones. Adieu.

John Adams

April 14, 1776

You justly complain of my short letters, but the critical state of things and the multiplicity of avocations must plead my excuse. You ask where the fleet is? The enclosed papers will inform you. You ask what sort of defense Virginia can make? I believe they will make an able defense. Their militia and minute-men have been some time employed in training themselves, and they have nine battalions of regulars, as they call them, maintained among them, under good officers, at the Continental expense. They have set up a number of manufactories of firearms, which are busily employed. They are tolerably supplied with powder, and are successful and assiduous in making saltpetre. Their neighboring sister, or rather daughter colony of North Carolina, which is a warlike colony, and has several battalions at the Continental expense, as well as a pretty good militia, are ready to assist them, and they are in very good spirits and seem determined to make a brave resistance. The gentry are very rich, and the common people very poor. This inequality of property gives an aristocratical turn to all their proceedings, and occasions a strong aversion in their patricians to "Common Sense." But the spirit of these Barons is coming down, and it must submit. It is very true, as you observe, they have been duped by Dunmore. But this is a common case. All the colonies are duped, more or less, at one time and another. A more egregious bubble was never blown up than the story of Commissioners coming to treat with the Congress, yet it has gained credit like a charm, not only with, but against the clearest evidence. I never shall forget the delusion which seized our best and most sagacious friends, the dear inhabitants of Boston, the winter before last. Credulity and the want of foresight are imperfections in the human character, that no politician can sufficiently guard against.

You give me some pleasure by your account of a certain house in Queen Street. I had burned it long ago in imagination. It rises now to my view like a phoenix. What shall I say of the Solicitor General? I pity his pretty children. I pity his father and his sisters. I wish I could be clear that it is no moral evil to pity him and his lady. Upon repentance, they will certainly have a large share in the compassions of many. But let us take warning, and give it to our children. Whenever vanity and gayety, a love of pomp and dress, furniture, equipage, buildings, great company, expensive diversions, and elegant entertainments get the better of the principles and judgments of men or women, there is no knowing where they will stop, nor into what evils, natural, moral, or political, they will lead us.

Your description of your own *gaieté de coeur* charms me. Thanks be to God, you have just cause to rejoice, and may the bright prospect be obscured by no cloud. As to declarations of independency, be patient. Read our privateering laws and our commercial laws. What signifies a word?

As to your extraordinary code of laws, I cannot but laugh. We have been told that our struggle has loosened the bonds of government everywhere; that children and apprentices were disobedient; that schools and colleges were grown turbulent; that Indians slighted their guardians, and negroes grew insolent to their masters. But your letter was the first intimation that another tribe, more numerous and powerful than all the rest, were grown discontented. This is rather too coarse a compliment, but you are so saucy, I won't blot it out. Depend upon it, we know better than to repeal our masculine systems. Although they are in full force, you know they are little more than theory. We dare not exert our power in its full latitude. We are obliged to go fair and softly, and, in practice, you know we are the subjects. We have only the name of masters, and rather than give up this, which would completely subject us to the despotism of the petticoat, I hope General Washington and all our brave heroes would fight; I am sure every good politician would plot, as long as he would against despotism, empire, monarchy, aristocracy, oligarchy, or ochlocracy. A fine story, indeed! I begin to think the ministry as deep as they are wicked. After stirring up Tories, land-jobbers, trimmers, bigots, Canadians, Indians, negroes, Hanoverians, Hessians, Russians, Irish Roman Catholics, Scotch renegadoes, at last they have stimulated the _____ to demand new privileges and threaten to rebel.

Chapter 10

Jill Ker Conway

Excerpt from *The Road from Coorain**

From The Road from Coorain by Jill Ker Conway, copyright © 1989 by Jill Ker Conway. Used by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, a division of Random House, Inc.

Because Christmas recalled our father's death, it was a difficult feast for us. Nevertheless, we had one of my mother's succulent roast turkeys and her ambrosial plum puddings before the boys left to spend the rest of the summer at Coorain. During January, we began to talk seriously about where I would attend school. My mother was daunted by the prospect of more private school fees as our debts grew and our assets dwindled. Did I think I would like the local state school? she asked me. We could see it each time we took a train—it was right beside the railway station, empty at present, surrounded by an acre of unkempt ground. I was startled. I had taken on my parents' values sufficiently to see this proposal

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 6.

as a distinct coming down in the world. Recognizing the worry in my mother's eyes, I said I would.

The first day of school in February was hot, 105 degrees. The school, a brick building with an iron roof, was like a furnace, and its inhabitants, teachers and students, wilted as the day wore on. I hated it from the moment I walked in the door. I was a snob, and I knew the accents of the teachers and most of the students were wrong by the exacting standards we'd had drummed into us at home. Worse still was the unruly behavior of everyone of every age. Boys pulled my hair when I refused to answer questions I took as rude or impudent; girls stuck out their tongues and used bad language. Teachers lost their tempers and caned pupils in front of the class. Few books were opened as the staff waged a losing battle to establish order. Recess and lunchtime were purgatorial. Crowds, or so it seemed to me, of jeering boys and a few girls gathered around to taunt me about my accent. "Stuck up, ain't you," they yelled, as I faced them in stubborn silence.

They were right. Now I was in a more diverse social universe than I had known at Coorain. I had no idea how to behave or what the rules were for managing social boundaries. I had been friends, one could say special friends, with Shorty, or with Ron Kelly, but that was in a simple world where we each knew our respective places. Here, I knew only that the old rules could not possibly apply. Everyone around me spoke broad Australian, a kind of speech my parents' discipline had ruthlessly eliminated. My interrogators could unquestionably be described by that word my mother used as a blanket condemnation of lower-class people, customs, and forms of behavior. They were "common." My encounter was a classic confrontation for the Australia of my generation. I, the carefully respectable copier of British manners, was being called to raucous and high-spirited account by the more vital and unquestionably authentic Australian popular culture. I was too uncertain to cope. I faced them in silence till the bell rang and we returned to the pandemonium of the unruly classroom.

After school, the same group assembled to escort me home to the accompaniment of catcalls and vivid commentaries on my parentage. I knew these city children could not outlast someone who was used to walking ten or twelve miles a day behind a herd of sheep, so our comic crocodile set out. I, stalking in front in frozen indignation, my attendant chorus gradually wilting as I led them along hot pavements and across streets where the heat had begun to melt the tarmac. After the last one had tired and dropped away, I made my way home where my mother was ostentatiously doing nothing in the front garden, on the watch for my arrival.

We had our afternoon tea in blissful silence. Finally she asked me how the day had gone. "It was all right," I said, determined not to complain. She studied my face thoughtfully. "You don't have to go back," she said. "I made a mistake. That's not the right school for you." Years later, I asked how she guessed what my day had been like. "I didn't have to ask," she said. "You were a child whose face was always alight with curiosity. When you came home that day, your face was closed. I knew you wouldn't learn anything there."

In fact, had I persevered I would have learned a great deal, though little of it from the harassed and overworked teachers in the ill-equipped classrooms. I'd have been obliged to come to terms with the Australian class system, and to see my family's world from the irreverent and often hilarious perspective of the Australian working class. It would have been invaluable knowledge, and my vision of Australia would have been the better for it. It was to take me another fifteen years to see the world from my own Australian perspective, rather than from the British definition taught to my kind of colonial. On the other hand, had I learned that earthy irreverence in my schooldays, it would have ruled out the appreciation of high culture in any form. My mother had no training for that appreciation, but she knew instinctively to seek it for her children. She did not reflect much about the underlying conflicts in Australian culture. She was simply determined that I would be brought up to abhor anything "common," and that, despite her financial worries, I would have the best education available in the Australia she knew.

The next day, my mother acted decisively. By some wizardry peculiarly hers, she persuaded the headmistress of Abbotsleigh, one of the most academically demanding of the private schools for girls in Sydney, to accept me as a pupil in the last year of the Junior School. Although there were long waiting lists for admission to the school, I was to begin at once, as a day girl, and become a boarder the next term.

Before being formally enrolled, I was taken for an interview with Miss Everett, the headmistress. To me she seemed like a benevolent being from another planet. She was over six feet tall, with the carriage and gait of a splendid athlete. Her dress was new to me. She wore a tweed suit of soft colors and battered elegance. She spoke in the plummy tones of a woman educated in England, and her intelligent face beamed with humor and curiosity. When she spoke, the habit of long years of teaching French made her articulate her words clearly and so forcefully that the unwary who stood too close were in danger of being sprayed like the audience too close to the footlights of a vaudeville show. "She looks strapping," she cheerfully commented to my mother, after talking to me for a few minutes alone. "She can begin tomorrow." Thereafter, no matter how I misbehaved, or what events brought me into her presence, I felt real benevolence radiating from Miss Everett.

The sight of her upright figure, forever striding across the school grounds, automatically caused her charges to straighten their backs. Those who slouched were often startled to have her appear suddenly behind them and seize their shoulders to correct their posture. Perhaps because she liked my stiff back we began a friendship that mattered greatly in my future. I never ceased to wonder at her, for Miss Everett was the first really free spirit I had ever met. She was impatient with bourgeois Australian culture, concerned about ideas, restless with the constraints of a Board of Trustees dominated by the low church evangelical Anglican archdiocese of Sydney, and she never bothered to conceal her feelings. She had been a highly successful amateur athlete, and had earned her first degree in French literature at the Sorbonne. After Paris, she had studied modern literature in Germany. To me and to many others, she was a true bearer

of European cultural ideals in Australia. She loved learning for itself, and this made her a most unusual schoolteacher. The academic mentality in the Australia of my childhood focused on knowledge as a credential, a body of information one had to use as a mechanic would his tools. With her French training, she saw her academic task as one of conveying to her charges the kinds of disciplines which released the mind for creativity and speculation. This, to many of her peers, was a subversive goal. She was a successful headmistress because she was also an astute politician, bending before the winds of provincial prejudice whenever they blew strongly over issues of discipline and behavior. But it was characteristic of her that she made her mind up about flouting the waiting lists of daughters of old girls because she'd been struck during our ten minutes together by the range of my vocabulary. My mother and I had had a hard few years, she had remarked to get us started. "Yes," I said, "we have lived through a great natural catastrophe." She wanted eleven-year-olds who thought that way in her school and cheerfully ignored the admission rules.

Thereafter, I hurried quickly past the desert of the local state school to the railway station and rode the seven minutes south to Wahroonga, the suburb of my new school. On my path homeward, I only once saw my former attendant chorus ranging restlessly about the local state school grounds. Seeing me, they took flight like a flock of birds, alighting by the fence as I strode past. I was prepared for hostility, but they were remarkably genial. "We don't blame you for leaving this fucking school, Jill," the ringleader shouted cheerfully. "It's no bloody good." I was too young and insecure to wonder what a good school might have made of such high-spirited pupils, and I had as yet no sense of injustice that the difference between our chances for education were as night and day. At Abbotsleigh, even though I was immediately ushered into a classroom of thirty-six total strangers, it seemed as though I had already arrived in paradise. Many students were boarders from distant country areas who had also had to overcome their shyness and become social beings. At breaks between classes they understood my tongue-tied silence. I was placed at a desk next to one of the kindest and most helpful members of the class, and two girls were deputed to see to it that I was not lonely my first day. I could scarcely believe my good fortune. Better still, the teacher, Miss Webb, a woman in her late twenties, knew exactly when to put the class to work, and when to relax and allow high spirits to run relatively free. Our classroom was an orderly and harmonious place where the subjects were taught well and the students encouraged to learn. Even the strange ritual of the gymnasium was less puzzling. The teachers were used to bush children and took the time to explain what the exercises were for, or to tell me that I would soon learn the eye-hand coordination I lacked.

Our curriculum was inherited from Great Britain, and consequently it was utterly untouched by progressive notions in education. We took English grammar, complete with parsing and analysis, we were drilled in spelling and punctuation, we read English poetry and were tested in scansion, we read English fiction, novels, and short stories and analyzed the style. Each year, we studied a Shakespeare play, committing much of it to memory, and performing scenes from it on April 23 in honor of Shakespeare's birthday.

We might have been in Sussex for all the attention we paid to Australian poetry and prose. It did not count. We, for our part, dutifully learned Shakespeare's imagery drawn from the English landscape and from English horticulture. We memorized Keats's "Ode to Autumn" or Shelley on the skylark without ever having seen the progression of seasons and the natural world they referred to. This gave us the impression that great poetry and fiction were written by and about people and places far distant from Australia. Palgrave's *Golden Treasury* or the Oxford collection of romantic poetry we read were so beautiful it didn't seem to matter, though to us poetry was more like incantation than related to the rhythms of our own speech. As for landscape, we learned by implication that ours was ugly, because it deviated totally from the landscape of the Cotswolds and the Lake Country, or the romantic hills and valleys of Constable.

After English (eight classes a week) came history (five times a week). We learned about Roman Britain and memorized a wonderful jumble of Angles, Saxons, Picts, and Boadicea. In geography (three times a week), we studied the great rivers of the world. They were the Ganges, the Indus, the Amazon, the Plate, the Rhine, the Danube, the Nile, the Congo, the St. Lawrence, and the Mississippi. When the question was raised, Australia was defined once again by default. Our vast continent had no great river system; its watercourses flowed inland to Lake Eyre, an anomaly which was quickly dismissed as a distraction from the business at hand. Once a week, we read scripture, sticking to the Old Testament and learning its geography as a distraction from its bloodthirsty tribal battles. Nothing in the instruction suggested that this sacred subject bore any relation to our daily lives, although because we read the Bible, we were supposed to be particularly well behaved during this class.

In mathematics, we studied arithmetic and simple geometry, five times a week. The textbooks were English, and the problems to be solved assumed another natural environment. It was possible to do them all as a form of drill without realizing that the mathematical imagination helped one explore and analyze the continuities and discontinuities of the order which lay within and beneath natural phenomena. We learned to treat language as magical, but not numbers and their relationships. Somehow we knew that mathematics was important, as a form of intellectual discipline. However, our problems to solve had to do with shopping and making change, pumping water from one receptacle to another at constant volumes, or measuring the areas of things. These did not encourage the visualizing of shapes and relationships, let alone hint at the wonders of physics.

Once a week we had choir lessons, lessons in painting and drawing, and in sewing. The sewing was of the nonutilitarian type, embroidery or crewel work. The art concerned lessons in perspective, conveyed with no historical context describing the development of Western ideas about the representation of objects. Choir was group instruction in singing and the reading of music. All these practical subjects assumed some previous background which I did not possess, so that I fiddled away the hour and a half appearing busy enough to escape rebuke, but never really undertaking any project. In choir, I soon learned that I could not carry a tune and that it was better to move my mouth soundlessly and look interested. My imagination might have been fired by reproductions of great

painting and sculpture, but we did not look at them. Nor did our classes ever hint at the great body of Australian painting which already existed, or the vitality of the artistic efflorescence taking place in our own city even as we studied. As with our study of art, we were not taught what music *was*. It was enough that a lady knew how to carry a tune and to read music. Those who were talented mastered performance, but the rest of us were left to learn about music and dance as forms of expression on our own.

Although our curriculum ignored our presence in Australia, the school itself demonstrated how the Australian landscape could be enhanced by a discerning eye. Its ample grounds were a far cry from the barren setting of my local state school with its hot dusty building and gritty yard. It stood on twenty or so acres rising up a hillside toward one of the highest points of the gentle hills which made up the terrain between Sydney Harbor and the entrance to the Hawkesbury River, to the north of the Harbor. The school's residential buildings clustered along the main highway running north from Sydney, the Pacific Highway. Behind them, close to the main entrance, two groups of classroom buildings formed a quadrangle with a residence and the administration buildings. Patches of bush had been manicured a little to control steep grades down to two levels of playing fields. Paths led to more dispersed dormitories, and around them were plantings which created places for day students to sit outside at lunch, and for boarders to enjoy during the weekend. Rose gardens, jacarandas, jasmine, honeysuckle, mock-orange, peach, plum, and quince trees perfumed the air in spring, and the planting pulled out the contours of the land without interrupting the sense of the wildness of the pockets of bush skillfully left to separate different grades and functional areas. Tucked away at the northern end were banks of tennis courts and closer to the main buildings were basketball courts and a sunken court with a high cement wall at which budding tennis stars honed their backhand and leapt to smash their forehand drive.

In this setting thronged some three hundred pupils in the Junior School, and another eight hundred or so students in high school grades. Much about our way of life symbolized the colonial mentality. Its signs were visible in the maps on our classroom walls, extended depictions of the globe with much of Africa, all of the Indian subcontinent, parts of Southeast Asia, half of North America, colored the bright red of the British Empire. Our uniforms, copies of those of English schools, indicated that we were only partially at home in our environment. In winter, we wore pine green tunics, cream blouses, green flannel blazers, dark brown cotton stockings, green velour hats, and brown cotton gloves. In summer, we wore starched green linen dresses with cream collars, the same blazer, beige socks, a cream panama hat, and the same brown gloves. Woe betide the student caught shedding the blazer or the gloves in public, even when the thermometer was over 100 degrees. She was letting down the school, behaving unbecomingly, and betraying the code involved in being a lady. Ladies, we learned, did not consider comfort more important than propriety in dress or manners. Disciplinary action was taken instantly when it was learned that an Abbotsleigh student had not leapt to her feet in train or bus to offer her seat to an older person, male or female. Speaking loudly, sitting in public in any fashion except bolt upright

with a ramrod-straight back, were likewise sorts of behavior which let down the school. When the more rebellious asked why this was so, the answer was clear and unequivocal. We were an elite. We were privileged girls and young women who had an obligation to represent the best standards of behavior to the world at large. The best standards were derived from Great Britain, and should be emulated unquestioningly. Those were the standards which had led to such a sizable part of the map of the globe being colored red, and we let them slip at our peril. No one paused to think that gloves and blazers had a function in damp English springs which they lacked entirely in our blazing summers.

Speech was another important aspect of deportment. One's voice must be well modulated and purged of all ubiquitous Australian diphthongs. Teachers were tireless in pointing them out and stopping the class until the offender got the word right. Drills of "how now brown cow" might have us all scarlet in the face with choked schoolgirl laughter, but they were serious matters for our instructors, ever on guard against the diphthongs that heralded cultural decline.

The disciplinary system also modeled the British heritage. We were an elite. Ergo we were born to be leaders. However, the precise nature of the leadership was by no means clear. For some of our mentors, excelling meant a fashionable marriage and leadership in philanthropy. For others, it meant intellectual achievement and the aspiration to a university education. Since the great majority of the parents supporting the school favored the first definition, the question of the social values which should inform leadership was carefully glossed over. Eminence in the school's hierarchy could come from being a lively and cheerful volunteer, a leader in athletics, or from intellectual achievement. The head girl was always carefully chosen to offend no particular camp aligned behind the competing definitions. She was always a good-natured all-rounder.

The discipline code and the manner of its administration might well have been designed to prepare us to be subalterns in the Indian army, or district officers in some remote jungle colony. The routine running of the school was managed by class captains and prefects selected by the headmistress. Prefects administered the rules of behavior and imposed penalties without there being any recourse to a higher authority. Cheating or letting down the side were far more serious offenses than failures of sensitivity. Theft was the ultimate sin. It being Australia, prowess at sports excused most breaches of the rules or failures of decorum. Bookishness and dislike for physical activity, on the other hand, aroused dark suspicions and warranted disciplinary action for the slightest infringement of the rules.

Hardiness was deemed more important than imagination. Indeed, an observer might have believed that the school's founders had been inspired by John Locke and Mistress Masham. Boarders rose at 6:30 a.m. to take cold showers even in midwinter. The aim was to encourage everyone to run at least a mile before breakfast, although slugabeds and poor planners could manage a frantic dash for breakfast without too frequent rebukes.

While this regimen might be seen as a precursor of later obsessions with health and fitness, our diet undid whatever benefits our routine of exercise conferred. We lived on starch, over-cooked meat, and endless eggs and bacon. Fruit appeared in

one's diet only if parents intervened and arranged for special supplies to be made available outside meal hours. Slabs of bread and butter accompanied every meal, so that the slimmest figures thickened and susceptible complexions became blotchy.

What meals lacked in culinary style they made up for in formality. A mistress or a sixth-form boarder sat at the head of each long rectangular table. The rest of us, bathed and changed into a required green velvet dress for evenings, sat in descending order of age and class until the youngest and most recently arrived sat at the distant foot of the table. Food was served by the teacher or sixth former at the head of the table, and the rules of conduct decreed that one might not ask for more or less, and that one must endure in silence until someone farther up the table noticed that one needed salt, pepper, butter, tea, or whatever seasonings made our tasteless dishes palatable. Foibles in food were not tolerated. If a student refused to eat the main dish and the teacher in charge noticed, it would be served to her again at subsequent meals until it was deemed that a satisfactory amount had been consumed. The youngest were required to wait to be spoken to before starting a conversation, as though those seated higher up the table were royalty. People who made too much noise or displayed unseemly manners were sent from the room and left hungry until the next meal.

All these rules might have made for stilted behavior, but in fact, they barely subdued the roar of conversation in the boarders' dining room, and only modestly curtailed the animal spirits of the younger students intent at one and the same time on getting more than their share of food, and on whatever form of mischief might disconcert the figure of authority seated at the head of the table.

After I became a boarder in my second term, I looked forward to the two hours which followed dinner, hours when the whole boarding population gathered for carefully supervised preparation for the next day's classes. I could usually finish what was required in short order, and then I could relish the quiet. The day of classes and the afternoon of games seemed to my bush consciousness to be too full of voices. I liked to sit and read poetry, to race ahead in the history book and ponder the events described. I also liked occasionally to manage some feat of wickedness in total silence, such as to wriggle undetected from one end of the "prep" room to the other to deliver some innocuous note or message. Ron Kelly's training in hunting had given me the patience required to move silently, and the satisfaction of going about my own business rather than following orders appealed to me deeply.

Much of my time during the first year or so of my schooling at Abbotsleigh was taken up with the pleasure of defying adult authority and systematically flouting the rules. Lights out in the evening was merely a license to begin to roam about the school, to climb out the window and appear as a somewhat dusty apparition in someone else's dormitory. Restrictions on what one could bring back to school in the way of food were an invitation to figure out the multifarious opportunities for concealing forbidden chocolates, sponge cakes, fruit cakes, soft drinks, and other bulky items as one returned to school from weekly trips to the dentist or weekends of freedom at midterm. Locks on the door of the tuck-shop were no barrier to country children used to dismantling doors and reassembling them.

These escapades were natural reactions to regimentation. They were also my first opportunity to rebel without the danger of doing psychological damage to adults of whom I was prematurely the care giver. It was a delicious and heady feeling undimmed even when my mother was told of my misbehavior. She took it that I was keeping bad company, although this was hardly reflected in my academic performance. I knew that I was being perversely carefree and irresponsible for the first time in my life. I could not articulate a criticism of my mother yet, but I could see the pretenses behind many of the school's rules, and I enjoyed being hypercritical of the people who tried to make me sleep and wake to a schedule, always wear clean socks on Sundays, and never forget my gloves when leaving the school.

After one rebellious scrape led to my being gated over the Easter break, my mother called on Miss Everett and began to apologize for my bad conduct. Miss Everett, with an imperious wave of the hand, interrupted her in mid-sentence. "My dear Mrs. Ker, don't fuss. There's nothing to worry about. I've yet to see Jill's mind fully extended, and I look forward to the day when I do. When she's really interested, she'll forget about breaking rules." These comments, duly reported to my brothers, led to much teasing, and examinations of my head to detect signs of stretching, but they also gave me some freedom from my mother's pressure for perfect conduct, freedom which I badly needed.

I was not a popular student. No one could call me pretty. I had ballooned on the school's starchy diet, developed a poor complexion, and I looked the embodiment of adolescent ungainliness. Moreover, my pride prevented me from seizing opportunities to correct my lack of coordination. I could not bear to begin tennis lessons with the seven-year-old beginners, but could not pretend to play like my classmates, who had been coached for years. A month after arriving as a boarder, I purchased a magnifying glass, found a quiet spot in the sun, and burned the carefully inscribed name off my tennis racket. Once I was satisfied with the job, I turned the racket in at the school's lost property office and escaped further lessons by bewailing the loss of my racket. Basketball was different. Everyone was beginning that game more or less as I began. With diligence my height could be turned to advantage and I earned a place on a team. Thereafter, afternoons could be filled with basketball practice, and Saturday mornings with competition. I liked the excitement of the game, although I never learned to treat a game as a game, and not to care about losing.

I was as intellectually precocious as I was socially inept. I never understood the unspoken rule which required that one display false modesty and hang back when there was a task to be done, waiting to be asked to undertake it. I also took a long time to learn the social hierarchies of the place: whose parents were very rich, whose family had titled relatives in England, whose mother dressed in the height of fashion, which families owned the most stylish holiday retreats. My boarder friends were mainly the daughters of the real backcountry, people who were homesick for the bush and their families and accepted the school as a term which must be served uncomplainingly.

I liked getting out from under the pressure of my mother's company, but at the same time, I was burdened by the sense that she had taken on two jobs, a

secretarial one by day and a nursing one at night, in order to pay my fees. As soon as she had delivered me to Abbotsleigh as a boarder, my mother moved back to my grandmother's house, settled Bob in a rented room down the road, and began to work in earnest. Once she had satisfied herself that she could earn enough to pay Barry's and my school fees and pay the rent for herself and my older brother, she began to concentrate her energies on the kind of investment which would be needed to make Coorain profitable again. She had no thought of selling it, but planned to revive it as a sheep-raising venture once it rained. She had a sure instinct for the economics of a small business, and long before others in our drought-stricken district began to think about restocking, she had realized that if she waited for the rain to fall before buying sheep, the price would be so high it would be years before she paid off the cost of the purchase. Once the drought had broken in areas two to three hundred miles from Coorain, she began to look for suitable sale sheep to form the basis for rebuilding the Coorain flock. She planned to hire a drover to walk her purchases through the stock routes in country where the rains had come until the drought broke at Coorain. On the day she borrowed sixteen hundred pounds from her wool-broker and signed the papers to purchase twelve hundred Merino ewes, she arrived home to learn that there had been two and a half inches of rain at Coorain. The value of her purchase had doubled within a matter of hours and she was rightly jubilant. Two weeks later, there was another inch and a half of rain and by the time the new sheep were delivered by their drover to Coorain, it was producing luxuriant pasture. From that day on our finances were assured, thanks to her inspired gamble.

None of the new earnings were frittered away on improving our style of life. Instead, every penny went back into building up the property, replacing buried fences, repairing the stockyards, buying new equipment. My mother kept on at one of her jobs, found us an inexpensive house to rent in an unfashionable, lower-middle-class suburb to the west of the city, and gradually began to reunite the family.

The reunion at the end of my second term as a boarder at Abbotsleigh brought together a group of young people on the edge of major life changes. Bob, at nineteen, was a young man impatient to savor life, and in search of the adventure he had once expected to find in wartime. Barry, at seventeen, was intent on leaving the King's School before completing high school. He had by then been in boarding school for seven years, and he was convinced that he would learn more from work experience and evening study than during an eighth year of routine in the closed world of the school he no longer enjoyed. I, approaching thirteen years old, looked and felt an awkward adolescent. Our mother, now in her forty-ninth year, looked her years, but she had regained some of her old vitality. Release from stress, and the chance to recoup the family fortunes at Coorain, had restored some of her beautiful coloring and brought back a sparkle to her eyes.

Although many men friends, including our favorite, Angus Waugh, tried to persuade her to marry again, she rebuffed them all. She had loved our father deeply, and she clearly did not want to share the raising of their children with

anyone else. She still found herself swept by waves of anger and grief at his loss. Strangers who sat opposite her in the train or the local bus would occasionally be startled by the gaze of hatred she turned on them. She would literally be possessed by rage that other men were alive while her husband was dead.

The intensity of her feelings did not bode well for anyone's peace of mind as we children moved at various paces toward adulthood. She was out of touch with the mood of the postwar world we were entering. She now found it hard to imagine vocations for her sons except the land and the life of a grazier. The boys, understandably, given our recent experiences, did not want to embark on that path. I, for my part, was teetering on the edge of a more mature awareness of the people in my world. I found my brothers entrancing, developed romantic crushes on their friends, and tagged along as often as possible on their diversions.

These were mainly concerned with music, music being the one sociable activity at home my mother approved of and encouraged. Bob began to study the trumpet, Barry the clarinet, while their circle of friends revolved around jazz concerts, listening to recordings of the great jazz musicians, and studying music theory. Our tiny rented house was often crammed with young men participating in or listening to the latest jazz session. When the small living room could not contain the noise of the excited improvisation, I would be dispatched to sit on the curb across the street to listen and report how it really sounded. Doubtless, had we lived in a stuffier neighborhood there would have been complaints about the noise. Our kindly neighbors approved of a widowed mother keeping her sons at home and away from the Australian obsession with pubs and gambling.

My mother's code of thrift, sobriety, and industry had served her well growing up in a simpler Australian society, but it had little appeal for her children, hungry for excitement and experience, and made aware of a more complex society by their urban schooling. Postwar Australia was a society transformed by the economic stimulus of the Second World War. In contrast to the cautious mentality inherited by the generation shaped by the Depression, we were agog with the excitement of prosperity, and the questions raised by Australia's wartime contact with American culture. We went to American movies, used American slang, and listened to American music.

The boys, reluctant to remain dependent on their widowed mother, seized the best jobs they could find, unaware that it was in their long-term interest to attend university and acquire professional training. In my mother's generation, higher education was a luxury available to a tiny elite. In ours, it would become a necessary doorway to opportunity. The choice of early employment meant that Bob and Barry did not find excitement and challenge in the fairly routine tasks which made up their jobs with woolbrokers. They sought excitement instead in music, and later in the world of fast cars and road racing. By reason of my gender, I was not marked out for a career connected with the land. Moreover, as our finances improved it was possible for my mother to dream that I would fulfill her ambition: attend university and become a doctor. So the stereotypes of gender worked in my favor. Unlike my brothers, I grew up knowing that my life would be lived in peacetime, and that it was an unspoken expectation that I would finish high school and attend the University of Sydney.

Chapter 2

William Faulkner

Barn Burning*

From Collected Stories of William Faulkner by William Faulkner, copyright 1950 by Random House, Inc. Used by permission of Random House, Inc.

The store in which the Justice of the Peace's court was sitting smelled of cheese. The boy, crouched on his nail keg at the back of the crowded room, knew he smelled cheese, and more: from where he sat he could see the ranked shelves close-packed with the solid, squat, dynamic shapes of tin cans whose labels his stomach read, not from the lettering which meant nothing to his mind but from the scarlet devils and the silver curve of fish—this, the cheese which he knew he smelled and the hermetic meat which his intestines believed he smelled coming in intermittent gusts momentary and brief between the other constant one, the smell and sense just a little of fear because mostly of despair and grief, the old fierce pull of blood. He could not see the table where the Justice sat and before which his father and his father's enemy (*our enemy* he thought in that despair; *ours! mine and his both! He's my father!*) stood, but he could hear them, the two of them that is, because his father had said no word yet:

“But what proof have you, Mr. Harris?”

“I told you. The hog got into my corn. I caught it up and sent it back to him. He had no fence that would hold it. I told him so, warned him. The next time I put the hog in my pen. When he came to get it I gave him enough wire to patch up his pen. The next time I put the hog up and kept it. I rode down to his house and saw the wire I gave him still rolled on to the spool in his yard. I told him he could have the hog when he paid me a dollar pound fee. That evening a nigger came with the dollar and got the hog. He was a strange nigger. He said, ‘He say to tell you wood and hay kin burn.’ I said, ‘What?’ ‘That whut he say to tell you,’ the nigger said. ‘Wood and hay kin burn.’ That night my barn burned. I got the stock out but I lost the barn.”

“Where is the nigger? Have you got him?”

“He was a strange nigger, I tell you. I don't know what became of him.”

“But that's not proof. Don't you see that's not proof?”

“Get that boy up here. He knows.” For a moment the boy thought too that the man meant his older brother until Harris said, “Not him. The little one. The boy,” and, crouching, small for his age, small and wiry like his father, in patched and faded jeans even too small for him, with straight, uncombed, brown hair and eyes gray and wild as storm scud, he saw the men between himself and the table part and become a lane of grim faces, at the end of which he saw the Justice, a

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 5.

shabby, collarless, graying man in spectacles, beckoning him. He felt no floor under his bare feet; he seemed to walk beneath the palpable weight of the grim turning faces. His father, stiff in his black Sunday coat donned not for the trial but for the moving, did not even look at him. *He aims for me to lie*, he thought, again with that frantic grief and despair. *And I will have to do hit.*

“What’s your name, boy?” the Justice said.

“Colonel Sartoris Snopes,” the boy whispered.

“Hey?” the Justice said. “Talk louder. Colonel Sartoris? I reckon anybody named for Colonel Sartoris in this country can’t help but tell the truth, can they?” The boy said nothing. *Enemy! Enemy!* he thought; for a moment he could not even see, could not see that the Justice’s face was kindly nor discern that his voice was troubled when he spoke to the man named Harris: “Do you want me to question this boy?” But he could hear, and during those subsequent long seconds while there was absolutely no sound in the crowded little room save that of quiet and intent breathing it was as if he had swung outward at the end of a grape vine, over a ravine, and at the top of the swing had been caught in a prolonged instant of mesmerized gravity, weightless in time.

“No!” Harris said violently, explosively. “Damnation! Send him out of here!” Now time, the fluid world, rushed beneath him again, the voices coming to him again through the smell of cheese and sealed meat, the fear and despair and the old grief of blood:

“This case is closed. I can’t find against you, Snopes, but I can give you advice. Leave this country and don’t come back to it.”

His father spoke for the first time, his voice cold and harsh, level, without emphasis: “I aim to. I don’t figure to stay in a country among people who ...” he said something unprintable and vile, addressed to no one.

“That’ll do,” the Justice said. “Take your wagon and get out of this country before dark. Case dismissed.”

His father turned, and he followed the stiff black coat, the wiry figure walking a little stiffly from where a Confederate provost’s man’s musket ball had taken him in the heel on a stolen horse thirty years ago, followed the two backs now, since his older brother had appeared from somewhere in the crowd, no taller than the father but thicker, chewing tobacco steadily, between the two lines of grim-faced men and out of the store and across the worn gallery and down the sagging steps and among the dogs and half-grown boys in the mild May dust, where as he passed a voice hissed:

“Barn burner!”

Again he could not see, whirling; there was a face in a red haze, moonlike, bigger than the full moon, the owner of it half again his size, he leaping in the red haze toward the face, feeling no blow, feeling no shock when his head struck the earth, scrabbling up and leaping again, feeling no blow this time either and tasting no blood, scrabbling up to see the other boy in full flight and himself already leaping into pursuit as his father’s hand jerked him back, the harsh, cold voice speaking above him: “Go get in the wagon.”

It stood in a grove of locusts and mulberries across the road. His two hulking sisters in their Sunday dresses and his mother and her sister in calico and

sunbonnets were already in it, sitting on and among the sorry residue of the dozen and more movings which even the boy could remember—the battered stove, the broken beds and chairs, the clock inlaid with mother-of-pearl, which would not run, stopped at some fourteen minutes past two o'clock of a dead and forgotten day and time, which had been his mother's dowry. She was crying, though when she saw him she drew her sleeve across her face and began to descend from the wagon. "Get back," the father said.

"He's hurt. I got to get some water and wash his ..."

"Get back in the wagon," his father said. He got in too, over the tail-gate. His father mounted to the seat where the older brother already sat and struck the gaunt mules two savage blows with the peeled willow, but without heat. It was not even sadistic; it was exactly that same quality which in later years would cause his descendants to over-run the engine before putting a motor car into motion, striking and reining back in the same movement. The wagon went on, the store with its quiet crowd of grimly watching men dropped behind; a curve in the road hid it. *Forever* he thought. *Maybe he's done satisfied now, now that he has ...* stopping himself, not to say it aloud even to himself. His mother's hand touched his shoulder.

"Does hit hurt?" she said.

"Naw," he said. "Hit don't hurt. Lemme be."

"Can't you wipe some of the blood off before hit dries?" "I'll wash to-night," he said. "Lemme be, I tell you."

The wagon went on. He did not know where they were going. None of them ever did or ever asked, because it was always somewhere, always a house of sorts waiting for them a day or two days or even three days away. Likely his father had already arranged to make a crop on another farm before he ... Again he had to stop himself. He (the father) always did. There was something about his wolflike independence and even courage when the advantage was at least neutral which impressed strangers, as if they got from his latent ravening ferocity not so much a sense of dependability as a feeling that his ferocious conviction in the rightness of his own actions would be of advantage to all whose interest lay with his.

That night they camped, in a grove of oaks and beeches where a spring ran. The nights were still cool and they had a fire against it, of a rail lifted from a nearby fence and cut into lengths—a small fire, neat, niggard almost, a shrewd fire; such fires were his father's habit and custom always, even in freezing weather. Older, the boy might have remarked this and wondered why not a big one; why should not a man who had not only seen the waste and extravagance of war, but who had in his blood an inherent voracious prodigality with material not his own, have burned everything in sight? Then he might have gone a step farther and thought that that was the reason: that niggard blaze was the living fruit of nights passed during those four years in the woods hiding from all men, blue or gray, with his strings of horses (captured horses, he called them). And older still, he might have divined the true reason: that the element of fire spoke to some deep mainspring of his father's being, as the element of steel or of powder spoke to other men, as the one weapon for the preservation of integrity,

else breath were not worth the breathing, and hence to be regarded with respect and used with discretion.

But he did not think this now and he had seen those same niggard blazes all his life. He merely ate his supper beside it and was already half asleep over his iron plate when his father called him, and once more he followed the stiff back, the stiff and ruthless limp, up the slope and on to the starlit road where, turning, he could see his father against the stars but without face or depth—a shape black, flat, and bloodless as though cut from tin in the iron folds of the frockcoat which had not been made for him, the voice harsh like tin and without heat like tin:

“You were fixing to tell them. You would have told him.” He didn’t answer. His father struck him with the flat of his hand on the side of the head, hard but without heat, exactly as he had struck the two mules at the store, exactly as he would strike either of them with any stick in order to kill a horse fly, his voice still without heat or anger: “You’re getting to be a man. You got to learn. You got to learn to stick to your own blood or you ain’t going to have any blood to stick to you. Do you think either of them, any man there this morning, would? Don’t you know all they wanted was a chance to get at me because they knew I had them beat? Eh?” Later, twenty years later, he was to tell himself, “If I had said they wanted only truth, justice, he would have hit me again.” But now he said nothing. He was not crying. He just stood there. “Answer me,” his father said.

“Yes,” he whispered. His father turned. “Get on to bed. We’ll be there tomorrow.”

Tomorrow they were there. In the early afternoon the wagon stopped before a paintless two-room house identical almost with the dozen others it had stopped before even in the boy’s ten years, and again, as on the other dozen occasions, his mother and aunt got down and began to unload the wagon, although his two sisters and his father and brother had not moved.

“Likely hit ain’t fitten for hawgs,” one of the sisters said.

“Nevertheless, fit it will and you’ll hog it and like it,” his father said. “Get out of them chairs and help your Ma unload.”

The two sisters got down, big, bovine, in a flutter of cheap ribbons; one of them drew from the jumbled wagon bed a battered lantern, the other a worn broom. His father handed the reins to the older son and began to climb stiffly over the wheel. “When they get unloaded, take the team to the barn and feed them.” Then he said, and at first the boy thought he was still speaking to his brother: “Come with me.” “Me?” he said.

“Yes,” his father said. “You.”

“Abner,” his mother said. His father paused and looked back—the harsh level stare beneath the shaggy, graying, irascible brows.

“I reckon I’ll have a word with the man that aims to begin tomorrow ownin’ me body and soul for the next eight months.”

They went back up the road. A week ago—or before last night, that is—he would have asked where they were going, but not now. His father had struck him before last night but never before had he paused afterward to explain why;

it was as if the blow and the following calm, outrageous voice still rang, repercussed, divulging nothing to him save the terrible handicap of being young, the light weight of his few years, just heavy enough to prevent his soaring free of the world as it seemed to be ordered but not heavy enough to keep him footed solid in it, to resist it and try to change the course of its events.

Presently he could see the grove of oaks and cedars and the other flowering trees and shrubs where the house would be, though not the house yet. They walked beside a fence massed with honey-suckle and Cherokee roses and came to a gate swinging open between two brick pillars, and now, beyond a sweep of drive, he saw the house for the first time and at that instant he forgot his father and the terror and despair both, and even when he remembered his father again (who had not stopped) the terror and despair did not return. Because, for all the twelve movings, they had sojourned until now in a poor country, a land of small farms and fields and houses, and he had never seen a house like this before. *Hit's big as a courthouse* he thought quietly, with a surge of peace and joy whose reason he could not have thought into words, being too young for that: *They are safe from him. People whose lives are a part of this peace and dignity are beyond his touch, he no more to them than a buzzing wasp: capable of stinging for a little moment but that's all; the spell of this peace and dignity rendering even the barns and stable and cribs which belong to it impervious to the puny flames he might contrive ...* this, the peace and joy, ebbing for an instant as he looked again at the stiff black back, the stiff and implacable limp of the figure which was not dwarfed by the house, for the reason that it had never looked big anywhere and which now, against the serene columned backdrop, had more than ever that impervious quality of something cut ruthlessly from tin, depthless, as though, sidewise to the sun, it would cast no shadow. Watching him, the boy remarked the absolutely undeviating course which his father held and saw the stiff foot come squarely down in a pile of fresh droppings where a horse had stood in the drive and which his father could have avoided by a simple change of stride. But it ebbed only for a moment, though he could not have thought this into words either, walking on in the spell of the house, which he could even want but without envy, without sorrow, certainly never with that ravaging and jealous rage which unknown to him walked in the ironlike black coat before him: *Maybe he will feel it too. Maybe it will even change him now from what maybe he couldn't help but be.*

They crossed the portico. Now he could hear his father's stiff foot as it came down on the boards with clocklike finality, a sound out of all proportion to the displacement of the body it bore and which was not dwarfed either by the white door before it, as though it had attained to a sort of vicious and ravaging minimum not to be dwarfed by anything—the flat, wide, black hat, the formal coat of broadcloth which had once been black but which had now that friction-glazed greenish cast of the bodies of old house flies, the lifted sleeve which was too large, the lifted hand like a curled claw. The door opened so promptly that the boy knew the Negro must have been watching them all the time, an old man with neat grizzled hair, in a linen jacket, who stood barring the door with his body, saying, “Wipe yo foots, white man, fo you come in here. Major ain't home nohow.”

“Get out of my way, nigger,” his father said, without heat too, flinging the door back and the Negro also and entering, his hat still on his head. And now the boy saw the prints of the stiff foot on the doorjamb and saw them appear on the pale rug behind the machinelike deliberation of the foot which seemed to bear (or transmit) twice the weight which the body compassed. The Negro was shouting “Miss Lula! Miss Lula!” somewhere behind them, then the boy, deluged as though by a warm wave by a suave turn of carpeted stair and a pendant glitter of chandeliers and a mute gleam of gold frames, heard the swift feet and saw her too, a lady—perhaps he had never seen her like before either—in a gray, smooth gown with lace at the throat and an apron tied at the waist and the sleeves turned back, wiping cake or biscuit dough from her hands with a towel as she came up the hall, looking not at his father at all but at the tracks on the blond rug with an expression of incredulous amazement.

“I tried,” the Negro cried. “I tole him to ...”

“Will you please go away?” she said in a shaking voice. “Major de Spain is not at home. Will you please go away?”

His father had not spoken again. He did not speak again. He did not even look at her. He just stood stiff in the center of the rug, in his hat, the shaggy iron-gray brows twitching slightly above the pebble-colored eyes as he appeared to examine the house with brief deliberation. Then with the same deliberation he turned; the boy watched him pivot on the good leg and saw the stiff foot drag round the arc of the turning, leaving a final long and fading smear. His father never looked at it, he never once looked down at the rug. The Negro held the door. It closed behind them, upon the hysteric and indistinguishable woman-wail. His father stopped at the top of the steps and scraped his boot clean on the edge of it. At the gate he stopped again. He stood for a moment, planted stiffly on the stiff foot, looking back at the house. “Pretty and white, ain’t it?” he said. “That’s sweat. Nigger sweat. Maybe it ain’t white enough yet to suit him. Maybe he wants to mix some white sweat with it.”

Two hours later the boy was chopping wood behind the house within which his mother and aunt and the two sisters (the mother and aunt, not the two girls, he knew that; even at this distance and muffled by walls the flat loud voices of the two girls emanated an incorrigible idle inertia) were setting up the stove to prepare a meal, when he heard the hooves and saw the linen-clad man on a fine sorrel mare, whom he recognized even before he saw the rolled rug in front of the Negro youth following on a fat bay carriage horse—a suffused, angry face vanishing, still at full gallop, beyond the corner of the house where his father and brother were sitting in the two tilted chairs; and a moment later, almost before he could have put the axe down, he heard the hooves again and watched the sorrel mare go back out of the yard, already galloping again. Then his father began to shout one of the sisters’ names, who presently emerged backward from the kitchen door dragging the rolled rug along the ground by one end while the other sister walked behind it.

“If you ain’t going to tote, go on and set up the wash pot,” the first said.

“You, Sarty!” the second shouted. “Set up the wash pot!” His father appeared at the door, framed against that shabbiness, as he had been against that

other bland perfection, impervious to either, the mother's anxious face at his shoulder.

"Go on," the father said. "Pick it up." The two sisters stooped, broad, lethargic; stooping, they presented an incredible expanse of pale cloth and a flutter of tawdry ribbons.

"If I thought enough of a rug to have to git hit all the way from France I wouldn't keep hit where folks coming in would have to tromp on hit," the first said. They raised the rug.

"Abner," the mother said. "Let me do it."

"You go back and git dinner," his father said. "I'll tend to this."

From the woodpile through the rest of the afternoon the boy watched them, the rug spread flat in the dust beside the bubbling wash-pot, the two sisters stooping over it with that profound and lethargic reluctance, while the father stood over them in turn, implacable and grim, driving them though never raising his voice again. He could smell the harsh homemade lye they were using; he saw his mother come to the door once and look toward them with an expression not anxious now but very like despair; he saw his father turn, and he fell to with the axe and saw from the corner of his eye his father raise from the ground a flattish fragment of field stone and examine it and return to the pot, and this time his mother actually spoke: "Abner. Abner. Please don't. Please, Abner."

Then he was done too. It was dusk; the whippoorwills had already begun. He could smell coffee from the room where they would presently eat the cold food remaining from the mid-afternoon meal, though when he entered the house he realized they were having coffee again probably because there was a fire on the hearth, before which the rug now lay spread over the backs of the two chairs. The tracks of his father's foot were gone. Where they had been were now long, water-cloudy scoriations resembling the sporadic course of a lilliputian mowing machine.

It still hung there while they ate the cold food and then went to bed, scattered without order or claim up and down the two rooms, his mother in one bed, where his father would later lie, the older brother in the other, himself, the aunt, and the two sisters on pallets on the floor. But his father was not in bed yet. The last thing the boy remembered was the depthless, harsh silhouette of the hat and coat bending over the rug and it seemed to him that he had not even closed his eyes when the silhouette was standing over him, the fire almost dead behind it, the stiff foot prodding him awake. "Catch up the mule," his father said.

When he returned with the mule his father was standing in the black door, the rolled rug over his shoulder. "Ain't you going to ride?" he said.

"No. Give me your foot."

He bent his knee into his father's hand, the wiry, surprising power flowed smoothly, rising, he rising with it, on to the mule's bare back (they had owned a saddle once; the boy could remember it though not when or where) and with the same effortlessness his father swung the rug up in front of him. Now in the starlight they retraced the afternoon's path, up the dusty road rife with

honeysuckle, through the gate and up the black tunnel of the drive to the lightless house, where he sat on the mule and felt the rough warp of the rug drag across his thighs and vanish.

“Don’t you want me to help?” he whispered. His father did not answer and now he heard again that stiff foot striking the hollow portico with that wooden and clock-like deliberation, that outrageous overstatement of the weight it carried. The rug, hunched, not flung (the boy could tell that even in the darkness) from his father’s shoulder struck the angle of wall and floor with a sound unbelievably loud, thunderous, then the foot again, unhurried and enormous; a light came on in the house and the boy sat, tense, breathing steadily and quietly and just a little fast, though the foot itself did not increase its beat at all, descending the steps now; now the boy could see him.

“Don’t you want to ride now?” he whispered. “We kin both ride now,” the light within the house altering now, flaring up and sinking. *He’s coming down the stairs now*, he thought. He had already ridden the mule up beside the horse block; presently his father was up behind him and he doubled the reins over and slashed the mule across the neck, but before the animal could begin to trot the hard, thin arm came round him, the hard, knotted hand jerking the mule back to a walk.

In the first red rays of the sun they were in the lot, putting plow gear on the mules. This time the sorrel mare was in the lot before he heard it at all, the rider collarless and even bareheaded, trembling, speaking in a shaking voice as the woman in the house had done, his father merely looking up once before stooping again to the hame he was buckling, so that the man on the mare spoke to his stooping back:

“You must realize you have ruined that rug. Wasn’t there anybody here, any of your women ...” he ceased, shaking, the boy watching him, the older brother leaning now in the stable door, chewing, blinking slowly and steadily at nothing apparently. “It cost a hundred dollars. But you never had a hundred dollars. You never will. So I’m going to charge you twenty bushels of corn against your crop. I’ll add it in your contract and when you come to the commissary you can sign it. That won’t keep Mrs. de Spain quiet but maybe it will teach you to wipe your feet off before you enter her house again.”

Then he was gone. The boy looked at his father, who still had not spoken or even looked up again, who was now adjusting the logger-head in the hame.

“Pap,” he said. His father looked at him—the inscrutable face, the shaggy brows beneath which the gray eyes glinted coldly. Suddenly the boy went toward him, fast, stopping as suddenly. “You done the best you could!” he cried. “If he wanted hit done different why didn’t he wait and tell you how? He won’t git no twenty bushels! He won’t git none! We’ll gether hit and hide hit! I kin watch ...” “Did you put the cutter back in that straight stock like I told you?” “No, sir,” he said.

“Then go do it.”

That was Wednesday. During the rest of that week he worked steadily, at what was within his scope and some which was beyond it, with an industry that did not need to be driven nor even commanded twice; he had this from his

mother, with the difference that some at least of what he did he liked to do, such as splitting wood with the half-size axe which his mother and aunt had earned, or saved money somehow, to present him with at Christmas. In company with the two older women (and on one afternoon, even one of the sisters), he built pens for the shoat and the cow which were a part of his father's contract with the landlord, and one afternoon, his father being absent, gone somewhere on one of the mules, he went to the field.

They were running a middle buster now, his brother holding the plow straight while he handled the reins, and walking beside the straining mule, the rich black soil shearing cool and damp against his bare ankles, he thought *Maybe this is the end of it. Maybe even that twenty bushels that seems hard to have to pay for just a rug will be a cheap price for him to stop forever and always from being what he used to be*; thinking, dreaming now, so that his brother had to speak sharply to him to mind the mule: *Maybe he even won't collect the twenty bushels. Maybe it will all add up and balance and vanish—corn, rug, fire; the terror and grief, the being pulled two ways like between two teams of horses—gone, done with for ever and ever.*

Then it was Saturday; he looked up from beneath the mule he was harnessing and saw his father in the black coat and hat. "Not that," his father said. "The wagon gear." And then, two hours later, sitting in the wagon bed behind his father and brother on the seat, the wagon accomplished a final curve, and he saw the weathered paintless store with its tattered tobacco- and patent-medicine posters and the tethered wagons and saddle animals below the gallery. He mounted the gnawed steps behind his father and brother, and there again was the lane of quiet, watching faces for the three of them to walk through. He saw the man in spectacles sitting at the plank table and he did not need to be told this was a Justice of the Peace; he sent one glare of fierce, exultant, partisan defiance at the man in collar and cravat now, whom he had seen but twice before in his life, and that on a galloping horse, who now wore on his face an expression not of rage but of amazed unbelief which the boy could not have known was at the incredible circumstance of being sued by one of his own tenants, and came and stood against his father and cried at the Justice: "He ain't done it! He ain't burnt ..."

"Go back to the wagon," his father said.

"Burnt?" the Justice said. "Do I understand this rug was burned too?"

"Does anybody here claim it was?" his father said. "Go back to the wagon." But he did not, he merely retreated to the rear of the room, crowded as that other had been, but not to sit down this time, instead, to stand pressing among the motionless bodies, listening to the voices:

"And you claim twenty bushels of corn is too high for the damage you did to the rug?"

"He brought the rug to me and said he wanted the tracks washed out of it. I washed the tracks out and took the rug back to him."

"But you didn't carry the rug back to him in the same condition it was in before you made the tracks on it."

His father did not answer, and now for perhaps half a minute there was no sound at all save that of breathing, the faint, steady suspiration of complete and intent listening.

“You decline to answer that, Mr. Snopes?” Again his father did not answer: “I’m going to find against you, Mr. Snopes. I’m going to find that you were responsible for the injury to Major de Spain’s rug and hold you liable for it. But twenty bushels of corn seems a little high for a man in your circumstances to have to pay. Major de Spain claims it cost a hundred dollars. October corn will be worth about fifty cents. I figure that if Major de Spain can stand a ninety-five dollar loss on something he paid cash for, you can stand a five-dollar loss you haven’t earned yet. I hold you in damages to Major de Spain to the amount of ten bushels of corn over and above your contract with him, to be paid to him out of your crop at gathering time. Court adjourned.”

It had taken no time hardly, the morning was but half begun. He thought they would return home and perhaps back to the field, since they were late, far behind all other farmers. But instead his father passed on behind the wagon, merely indicating with his hand for the older brother to follow with it, and crossed the road toward the blacksmith shop opposite, pressing on after his father, overtaking him, speaking, whispering up at the harsh, calm face beneath the weathered hat: “He won’t git no ten bushels neither. He won’t git one. We’ll . . .” until his father glanced for an instant down at him, the face absolutely calm, the grizzled eyebrows tangled above the cold eyes, the voice almost pleasant, almost gentle:

“You think so? Well, we’ll wait till October anyway.”

The matter of the wagon—the setting of a spoke or two and the tightening of the tires—did not take long either, the business of the tires accomplished by driving the wagon into the spring branch behind the shop and letting it stand there, the mules nuzzling into the water from time to time, and the boy on the seat with the idle reins, looking up the slope and through the sooty tunnel of the shed where the slow hammer rang and where his father sat on an upended cypress bolt, easily, either talking or listening, still sitting there when the boy brought the dripping wagon up out of the branch and halted it before the door.

“Take them on to the shade and hitch,” his father said. He did so and returned. His father and the smith and a third man squatting on his heels inside the door were talking, about crops and animals; the boy, squatting too in the ammonia dust and hoof-parings and scales of rust, heard his father tell a long and unhurried story out of the time before the birth of the older brother even when he had been a professional horsetrader. And then his father came up beside him where he stood before a tattered last year’s circus poster on the other side of the store, gazing rapt and quiet at the scarlet horses, the incredible poisonings and convolutions of tulle and tights and the painted leers of comedians, and said, “It’s time to eat.”

But not at home. Squatting beside his brother against the front wall, he watched his father emerge from the store and produce from a paper sack a segment of cheese and divide it carefully and deliberately into three with his pocket knife and produce crackers from the same sack. They all three squatted on the gallery and ate, slowly, without talking; then in the store again, they drank from a tin dipper tepid water smelling of the cedar bucket and of living beech trees.

And still they did not go home. It was a horse lot this time, a tall rail fence upon and along which men stood and sat and out of which one by one horses were led, to be walked and trotted and then cantered back and forth along the road while the slow swapping and buying went on and the sun began to slant westward, they—the three of them—watching and listening, the older brother with his muddy eyes and his steady, inevitable tobacco, the father commenting now and then on certain of the animals, to no one in particular.

It was after sundown when they reached home. They ate supper by lamp-light, then, sitting on the doorstep, the boy watched the night fully accomplish, listening to the whippoorwills and the frogs, when he heard his mother's voice: "Abner! No! No! Oh, God. Oh, God. Abner!" and he rose, whirled, and saw the altered light through the door where a candle stub now burned in a bottle neck on the table and his father, still in the hat and coat, at once formal and burlesque as though dressed carefully for some shabby and ceremonial violence, emptying the reservoir of the lamp back into the five-gallon kerosene can from which it had been filled, while the mother tugged at his arm until he shifted the lamp to the other hand and flung her back, not savagely or viciously, just hard, into the wall, her hands flung out against the wall for balance, her mouth open and in her face the same quality of hopeless despair as had been in her voice. Then his father saw him standing in the door.

"Go to the barn and get that can of oil we were oiling the wagon with," he said. The boy did not move. Then he could speak.

"What ..." he cried. "What are you ..."

"Go get that oil," his father said. "Go."

Then he was moving, running, outside the house, toward the stable: this the old habit, the old blood which he had not been permitted to choose for himself, which had been bequeathed him willy nilly and which had run for so long (and who knew where, battenning on what of outrage and savagery and lust) before it came to him. *I could keep on*, he thought. *I could run on and on and never look back, never need to see his face again. Only I can't. I can't*, the rusted can in his hand now, the liquid splashing in it as he ran back to the house and into it, into the sound of his mother's weeping in the next room, and handed the can to his father.

"Ain't you going to even send a nigger?" he cried. "At least you sent a nigger before!"

This time his father didn't strike him. The hand came even faster than the blow had, the same hand which had set the can on the table with almost excruciating care flashing from the can toward him too quick for him to follow it, gripping him by the back of his shirt and on to tiptoe before he had seen it quit the can, the face stooping at him in breathless and frozen ferocity, the cold, dead voice speaking over him to the older brother who leaned against the table, chewing with that steady, curious, sidewise motion of cows:

"Empty the can into the big one and go on. I'll catch up with you."

"Better tie him up to the bedpost," the brother said.

"Do like I told you," the father said. Then the boy was moving, his bunched shirt and the hard, bony hand between his shoulder-blades, his toes

just touching the floor, across the room and into the other one, past the sisters sitting with spread heavy thighs in the two chairs over the cold hearth, and to where his mother and aunt sat side by side on the bed, the aunt's arms about his mother's shoulders.

"Hold him," the father said. The aunt made a startled movement. "Not you," the father said. "Lennie. Take hold of him. I want to see you do it." His mother took him by the wrist. "You'll hold him better than that. If he gets loose don't you know what he is going to do? He will go up yonder." He jerked his head toward the road. "Maybe I'd better tie him."

"I'll hold him," his mother whispered.

"See you do then." Then his father was gone, the stiff foot heavy and measured upon the boards, ceasing at last.

Then he began to struggle. His mother caught him in both arms, he jerking and wrenching at them. He would be stronger in the end, he knew that. But he had no time to wait for it. "Lemme go!" he cried. "I don't want to have to hit you!"

"Let him go!" the aunt said. "If he don't go, before God, I am going up there myself."

"Don't you see I can't?" his mother cried. "Sarty! Sarty! No! No! Help me, Lizzie!"

Then he was free. His aunt grasped at him but it was too late. He whirled, running, his mother stumbled forward on to her knees behind him, crying to the nearer sister: "Catch him, Net! Catch him!" But that was too late too, the sister (the sisters were twins, born at the same time, yet either of them now gave the impression of being, encompassing as much living meat and volume and weight as any other two of the family) not yet having begun to rise from the chair, her head, face, alone merely turned, presenting to him in the flying instant an astonishing expanse of young female features untroubled by any surprise even, wearing only an expression of bovine interest. Then he was out of the room, out of the house, in the mild dust of the starlit road and the heavy ripeness of honey-suckle, the pale ribbon unspooling with terrific slowness under his running feet, reaching the gate at last and turning in, running, his heart and lungs drumming, on up the drive toward the lighted house, the lighted door. He did not knock, he burst in, sobbing for breath, incapable for the moment of speech; he saw the astonished face of the Negro in the linen jacket without knowing when the Negro had appeared.

"De Spain!" he cried, panted. "Where's ..." then he saw the white man too emerging from a white door down the hall. "Barn!" he cried. "Barn!"

"What?" the white man said. "Barn?"

"Yes!" the boy cried. "Barn!"

"Catch him!" the white man shouted.

But it was too late this time too. The Negro grasped his shirt, but the entire sleeve, rotten with washing, carried away, and he was out that door too and in the drive again, and had actually never ceased to run even while he was screaming into the white man's face.

Behind him the white man was shouting, “My horse! Fetch my horse!” and he thought for an instant of cutting across the park and climbing the fence into the road, but he did not know the park nor how high the vine-massed fence might be and he dared not risk it. So he ran on down the drive, blood and breath roaring; presently he was in the road again though he could not see it. He could not hear either: the galloping mare was almost upon him before he heard her, and even then he held his course, as if the very urgency of his wild grief and need must in a moment more find him wings, waiting until the ultimate instant to hurl himself aside and into the weed-choked roadside ditch as the horse thundered past and on, for an instant in furious silhouette against the stars, the tranquil early summer night sky which, even before the shape of the horse and rider vanished, stained abruptly and violently upward: a long, swirling roar incredible and soundless, blotting the stars, and he springing up and into the road again, running again, knowing it was too late yet still running even after he heard the shot and, an instant later, two shots, pausing now without knowing he had ceased to run, crying “Pap! Pap!”, running again before he knew he had begun to run, stumbling, tripping over something and scrabbling up again without ceasing to run, looking backward over his shoulder at the glare as he got up, running on among the invisible trees, panting, sobbing, “Father! Father!”

At midnight he was sitting on the crest of a hill. He did not know it was midnight and he did not know how far he had come. But there was no glare behind him now and he sat now, his back toward what he had called home for four days anyhow, his face toward the dark woods which he would enter when breath was strong again, small, shaking steadily in the chill darkness, hugging himself into the remainder of his thin, rotten shirt, the grief and despair now no longer terror and fear but just grief and despair. *Father. My father*, he thought. “He was brave!” he cried suddenly, aloud but not loud, no more than a whisper: “He was! He was in the war! He was in Colonel Sartoris’ cav’ry!” not knowing that his father had gone to that war a private in the fine old European sense, wearing no uniform, admitting the authority of and giving fidelity to no man or army or flag, going to war as Malbrouck himself did: for booty—it meant nothing and less than nothing to him if it were enemy booty or his own.

The slow constellations wheeled on. It would be dawn and then sun-up after a while and he would be hungry. But that would be tomorrow and now he was only cold, and walking would cure that. His breathing was easier now and he decided to get up and go on, and then he found that he had been asleep because he knew it was almost dawn, the night almost over. He could tell that from the whippoorwills. They were everywhere now among the dark trees below him, constant and inflectioned and ceaseless, so that, as the instant for giving over to the day birds drew nearer and nearer, there was no interval at all between them. He got up. He was a little stiff, but walking would cure that too as it would the cold, and soon there would be the sun. He went on down the hill, toward the dark woods within which the liquid silver voices of the birds called unceasing—the rapid and urgent beating of the urgent and quiring heart of the late spring night. He did not look back.

Chapter 8 and Chapter 11

Robert Frost

Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening

From The Poetry of Robert Frost, edited by Edward Connery Lathem, copyright 1951. Copyright 1923, © 1969 by Henry Holt and Company, LLC. Reprinted by permission of Henry Holt and Company, LLC.

Whose woods these are I think I know.
His house is in the village, though;
He will not see me stopping here
To watch his woods fill up with snow.

My little horse must think it queer
To stop without a farmhouse near
Between the woods and frozen lake
The darkest evening of the year.

He gives his harness bells a shake
To ask if there is some mistake.
The only other sound's the sweep
Of easy wind and downy flake.

The woods are lovely, dark, and deep,
But I have promises to keep,
And miles to go before I sleep,
And miles to go before I sleep.

Chapter 9

Ernest J. Gaines

The Sky Is Gray*

Copyright © 1963 by Ernest J. Gaines. From Bloodline by Ernest J. Gaines. Used by permission of Doubleday, a division of Random House, Inc.

1

Go'n be coming in a few minutes. Coming round that bend down there full speed. And I'm go'n get out my handkerchief and wave it down, and we go'n get on it and go.

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 4.

I keep on looking for it, but Mama don't look that way no more. She's looking down the road where we just come from. It's a long old road, and far's you can see you don't see nothing but gravel. You got dry weeds on both sides, and you got trees on both sides, and fences on both sides, too. And you got cows in the pastures and they standing close together. And when we was coming out here to catch the bus I seen the smoke coming out of the cows's noses.

I look at my mama and I know what she's thinking. I been with Mama so much, just me and her, I know what she's thinking all the time. Right now it's home—Auntie and them. She's thinking if they got enough wood—if she left enough there to keep them warm till we get back. She's thinking if it go'n rain and if any of them go'n have to go out in the rain. She's thinking 'bout the hog—if he go'n get out, and if Ty and Val be able to get him back in. She always worry like that when she leaves the house. She don't worry too much if she leave me there with the smaller ones, 'cause she know I'm go'n look after them and look after Auntie and everything else. I'm the oldest and she say I'm the man.

I look at my mama and I love my mama. She's wearing that black coat and that black hat and she's looking sad. I love my mama and I want put my arm round her and tell her. But I'm not supposed to do that. She say that's weakness and that's cry-baby stuff, and she don't want no crybaby round her. She don't want you to be scared, either. 'Cause Ty's scared of ghosts and she's always whipping him. I'm scared of the dark, too, but I make 'tend I ain't. I make 'tend I ain't 'cause I'm the oldest, and I got to set a good sample for the rest. I can't ever be scared and I can't ever cry. And that's why I never said nothing 'bout my teeth. It's been hurting me and hurting me close to a month now, but I never said it. I didn't say it 'cause I didn't want act like a crybaby, and 'cause I know we didn't have enough money to go have it pulled. But, Lord, it been hurting me. And look like it wouldn't start till at night when you was trying to get yourself little sleep. Then soon 's you shut your eyes—ummm-ummm, Lord, look like it go right down to your heartstring.

“Hurting, hanh?” Ty'd say.

I'd shake my head, but I wouldn't open my mouth for nothing. You open your mouth and let that wind in, and it almost kill you.

I'd just lay there and listen to them snore. Ty there, right 'side me, and Auntie and Val over by the fireplace. Val younger than me and Ty, and he sleeps with Auntie. Mama sleeps round the other side with Louis and Walker.

I'd just lay there and listen to them, and listen to that wind out there, and listen to that fire in the fireplace. Sometimes it'd stop long enough to let me get little rest. Sometimes it just hurt, hurt, hurt. Lord, have mercy.

2

Auntie knowed it was hurting me. I didn't tell nobody but Ty, 'cause we buddies and he ain't go'n tell nobody. But some kind of way Auntie found out. When she asked me, I told her no, nothing was wrong. But she knowed it all the time. She told me to mash up a piece of aspirin and wrap it in some cotton and jugg it down in that hole. I did it, but it didn't do no good. It stopped for a

little while, and started right back again. Auntie wanted to tell Mama, but I told her, "Uh-uh." 'Cause I knowed we didn't have any money, and it just was go'n make her mad again. So Auntie told Monsieur Bayonne, and Monsieur Bayonne came over to the house and told me to kneel down 'side him on the fireplace. He put his finger in his mouth and made the Sign of the Cross on my jaw. The tip of Monsieur Bayonne's finger is some hard, 'cause he's always playing on that guitar. If we sit outside at night we can always hear Monsieur Bayonne playing on his guitar. Sometimes we leave him out there playing on the guitar.

Monsieur Bayonne made the Sign of the Cross over and over on my jaw, but that didn't do no good. Even when he prayed and told me to pray some, too, that tooth still hurt me.

"How you feeling?" he say.

"Same," I say.

He kept on praying and making the Sign of the Cross and I kept on praying, too.

"Still hurting?" he say. "Yes, sir."

Monsieur Bayonne mashed harder and harder on my jaw. He mashed so hard he almost pushed me over on Ty. But then he stopped.

"What kind of prayers you praying, boy?" he say. "Baptist," I say.

"Well, I'll be—no wonder that tooth still killing him. I'm going one way and he pulling the other. Boy, don't you know any Catholic prayers?"

"I know 'Hail Mary,'" I say.

"Then you better start saying it."

"Yes, sir."

He started mashing on my jaw again, and I could hear him praying at the same time. And, sure enough, after while it stopped hurting me.

Me and Ty went outside where Monsieur Bayonne's two hounds was and we started playing with them. "Let's go hunting," Ty say. "All right," I say; and we went on back in the pasture. Soon the hounds got on a trail, and me and Ty followed them all 'cross the pasture and then back in the woods, too. And then they cornered this little old rabbit and killed him, and me and Ty made them get back, and we picked up the rabbit and started on back home. But my tooth had started hurting me again. It was hurting me plenty now, but I wouldn't tell Monsieur Bayonne. That night I didn't sleep a bit, and first thing in the morning Auntie told me to go back and let Monsieur Bayonne pray over me some more. Monsieur Bayonne was in his kitchen making coffee when I got there. Soon's he seen me he knowed what was wrong.

"All right, kneel down there 'side that stove," he say. "And this time make sure you pray Catholic. I don't know nothing 'bout that Baptist, and I don't want know nothing 'bout him."

3

Last night Mama say, "Tomorrow we going to town."

"It ain't hurting me no more," I say. "I can eat anything on it."

"Tomorrow we going to town," she say.

And after she finished eating, she got up and went to bed. She always go to bed early now. 'Fore Daddy went in the Army, she used to stay up late. All of us sitting out on the gallery or round the fire. But now, look like soon's she finish eating she go to bed.

This morning when I woke up, her and Auntie was standing 'fore the fireplace. She say: "Enough to get there and get back. Dollar and a half to have it pulled. Twenty-five for me to go, twenty-five for him. Twenty-five for me to come back, twenty-five for him. Fifty cents left. Guess I get little piece of salt meat with that." "Sure can use it," Auntie say. "White beans and no salt meat ain't white beans."

"I do the best I can," Mama say.

They was quiet after that, and I made 'tend I was still sleep.

"James, hit the floor," Auntie say.

I still made 'tend I was asleep. I didn't want them to know I was listening.

"All right," Auntie say, shaking me by the shoulder. "Come on. Today's the day."

I pushed the cover down to get out, and Ty grabbed it and pulled it back.

"You, too, Ty," Auntie say.

"I ain't getting no teef pulled," Ty say.

"Don't mean it ain't time to get up," Auntie say. "Hit it, Ty."

Ty got up grumbling.

"James, you hurry up and get in your clothes and eat your food," Auntie say. "What time y'all coming back?" she say to Mama.

"That 'leven o'clock bus," Mama say. "Got to get back in that field this evening."

"Get a move on you, James," Auntie say.

I went in the kitchen and washed my face, then I ate my breakfast. I was having bread and syrup. The bread was warm and hard and tasted good. And I tried to make it last a long time.

Ty came back there grumbling and mad at me.

"Got to get up," he say. "I ain't having no teefes pulled. What I got to be getting up for?"

Ty poured some syrup in his pan and got a piece of bread. He didn't wash his hands, neither his face, and I could see that white stuff in his eyes.

"You the one getting your teef pulled," he say. "What I got to get up for. I bet if I was getting a teef pulled, you wouldn't be getting up. Shucks; syrup again. I'm getting tired of this old syrup. Syrup, syrup, syrup. I'm go'n take with the sugar diabetes. I want me some bacon sometime."

"Go out in the field and work and you can have your bacon," Auntie say. She stood in the middle door looking at Ty. "You better be glad you got syrup. Some people ain't got that—hard's time is."

"Shucks," Ty say. "How can I be strong."

"I don't know too much 'bout your strength," Auntie say; "but I know where you go'n be hot at, you keep that grumbling up. James, get a move on you; your mama waiting."

I ate my last piece of bread and went in the front room. Mama was standing 'fore the fireplace warming her hands. I put on my coat and my cap, and we left the house.

I look down there again, but it still ain't coming. I almost say, "It ain't coming yet," but I keep my mouth shut. 'Cause that's something else she don't like. She don't like for you to say something just for nothing. She can see it ain't coming, I can see it ain't coming, so why say it ain't coming. I don't say it, I turn and look at the river that's back of us. It's so cold the smoke's just raising up from the water. I see a bunch of pool-does not too far out—just on the other side the lilies. I'm wondering if you can eat pool-does. I ain't too sure, 'cause I ain't never ate none. But I done ate owls and blackbirds, and I done ate redbirds, too. I didn't want kill the redbirds, but she made me kill them. They had two of them back there. One in my trap, one in Ty's trap. Me and Ty was go'n play with them and let them go, but she made me kill them 'cause we needed the food.

"I can't," I say. "I can't."

"Here," she say. "Take it."

"I can't," I say. "I can't. I can't kill him, Mama, please."

"Here," she say. "Take this fork, James."

"Please, Mama, I can't kill him," I say.

I could tell she was go'n hit me. I jerked back, but I didn't jerk back soon enough.

"Take it," she say.

I took it and reached in for him, but he kept on hopping to the back.

"I can't, Mama," I say. The water just kept on running down my face. "I can't," I say.

"Get him out of there," she say.

I reached in for him and he kept on hopping to the back. Then I reached in farther, and he pecked me on the hand.

"I can't, Mama," I say.

She slapped me again.

I reached in again, but he kept on hopping out my way. Then he hopped to one side and I reached there. The fork got him on the leg and I heard his leg pop. I pulled my hand but 'cause I had hurt him.

"Give it here," she say, and jerked the fork out my hand.

She reached in and got the little bird right in the neck. I heard the fork go in his neck, and I heard it go in the ground. She brought him out and held him right in front of me.

"That's one," she say. She shook him off and gived me the fork. "Get the other one."

"I can't, Mama," I say. "I'll do anything, but don't make me do that."

She went to the corner of the fence and broke the biggest switch over there she could find. I knelt 'side the trap, crying.

"Get him out of there," she say.

"I can't, Mama."

She started hitting me 'cross the back. I went down on the ground, crying.

“Get him,” she say.

“Octavia?” Auntie say.

’Cause she had come out of the house and she was standing by the tree looking at us.

“Get him out of there,” Mama say.

“Octavia,” Auntie say, “explain to him. Explain to him. Just don’t beat him. Explain to him.”

But she hit me and hit me and hit me.

I’m still young—I ain’t no more than eight; but I know now; I know why I had to do it. (They was so little, though. They was so little. I ’member how I picked the feathers off them and cleaned them and helt them over the fire. Then we all ate them. Ain’t had but a little bitty piece each, but we all had a little bitty piece, and everybody just looked at me ’cause they was so proud.) Suppose she had to go away? That’s why I had to do it. Suppose she had to go away like Daddy went away? Then who was go’n look after us? They had to be somebody left to carry on. I didn’t know it then, but I know it now. Auntie and Monsieur Bayonne talked to me and made me see.

5

Time I see it I get out my handkerchief and start waving. It’s still ’way down there, but I keep waving anyhow. Then it come up and stop and me and Mama get on. Mama tell me go sit in the back while she pay. I do like she say, and the people look at me. When I pass the little sign that say “White” and “Colored,” I start looking for a seat. I just see one of them back there, but I don’t take it, ’cause I want my mama to sit down herself. She comes in the back and sit down, and I lean on the seat. They got seats in the front, but I know I can’t sit there, ’cause I have to sit back of the sign. Anyhow, I don’t want sit there if my mama go’n sit back here.

They got a lady sitting ’side my mama and she looks at me and smiles little bit. I smile back, but I don’t open my mouth, ’cause the wind’ll get in and make that tooth ache. The lady take out a pack of gum and reach me a slice, but I shake my head. The lady just can’t understand why a little boy’ll turn down gum, and she reach me a slice again. This time I point to my jaw. The lady understands and smiles little bit, and I smile little bit, but I don’t open my mouth, though.

They got a girl sitting ’cross from me. She got on a red overcoat and her hair’s plaited in one big plait. First, I make ’tend I don’t see her over there, but then I start looking at her little bit. She make ’tend she don’t see me, either, but I catch her looking that way. She got a cold, and every now and then she h’ist that little handkerchief to her nose. She ought to blow it, but she don’t. Must think she’s too much a lady or something.

Every time she h’ist that little handkerchief, the lady ’side her say something in her ear. She shakes her head and lays her hands in her lap again. Then I catch her kind of looking where I’m at. I smile at her little bit. But think she’ll smile

back? Uh-uh. She just turn up her little old nose and turn her head. Well, I show her both of us can turn us head. I turn mine too and look out at the river.

The river is gray. The sky is gray. They have pool-doods on the water. The water is wavy, and the pool-doods go up and down. The bus go round a turn, and you got plenty trees hiding the river. Then the bus go round another turn, and I can see the river again.

I look toward the front where all the white people sitting. Then I look at that little old gal again. I don't look right at her, 'cause I don't want all them people to know I love her. I just look at her little bit, like I'm looking out that window over there. But she knows I'm looking that way, and she kind of look at me, too. The lady sitting 'side her catch her this time, and she leans over and says something in her ear.

"I don't love him nothing," that little old gal says out loud.

Everybody back there hear her mouth, and all of them look at us and laugh.

"I don't love you, either," I say. "So you don't have to turn up your nose, Miss."

"You the one looking," she say.

"I wasn't looking at you," I say. "I was looking out that window, there."

"Out that window, my foot," she say. "I seen you. Everytime I turned round you was looking at me."

"You must of been looking yourself if you seen me all them times," I say.

"Shucks," she say, "I got me all kind of boyfriends."

"I got girlfriends, too," I say.

"Well, I just don't want you getting your hopes up," she say.

I don't say no more to that little old gal 'cause I don't want have to bust her in the mouth. I lean on the seat where Mama sitting, and I don't even look that way no more. When we get to Bayonne, she jugg her little old tongue out at me. I make 'tend I'm go'n hit her, and she duck down 'side her mama. And all the people laugh at us again.

6

Me and Mama get off and start walking in town. Bayonne is a little bitty town. Baton Rouge is a hundred times bigger than Bayonne. I went to Baton Rouge once—me, Ty, Mama, and Daddy. But that was 'way back yonder, 'fore Daddy went in the Army. I wonder when we go'n see him again. I wonder when. Look like he ain't ever coming back home.... Even the pavement all cracked in Bayonne. Got grass shooting right out the sidewalk. Got weeds in the ditch, too; just like they got at home.

It's some cold in Bayonne. Look like it's colder than it is home. The wind blows in my face, and I feel that stuff running down my nose. I sniff. Mama says use that handkerchief. I blow my nose and put it back.

We pass a school and I see them white children playing in the yard. Big old red school, and them children just running and playing. Then we pass a café, and

I see a bunch of people in there eating. I wish I was in there 'cause I'm cold. Mama tells me keep my eyes in front where they belong.

We pass stores that's got dummies, and we pass another café, and then we pass a shoe shop, and that bald-head man in there fixing on a shoe. I look at him and I butt into that white lady, and Mama jerks me in front and tells me stay there.

We come up to the courthouse, and I see the flag waving there. This flag ain't like the one we got at school. This one here ain't got but a handful of stars. One at school got a big pile of stars—one for every state. We pass it and we turn and there it is—the dentist office. Me and Mama go in, and they got people sitting everywhere you look. They even got a little boy in there younger than me.

Me and Mama sit on that bench, and a white lady come in there and ask me what my name is. Mama tells her and the white lady goes on back. Then I hear somebody hollering in there. Soon's that little boy hear him hollering, he starts hollering, too. His mama pats him and pats him, trying to make him hush up, but he ain't thinking 'bout his mama.

The man that was hollering in there comes out holding his jaw. He is a big old man and he's wearing overalls and a jumper.

"Got it, hanh?" another man asks him.

The man shakes his head—don't want open his mouth.

"Man, I thought they was killing you in there," the other man says. "Hollering like a pig under a gate."

The man don't say nothing. He just heads for the door, and the other man follows him.

"John Lee," the white lady says. "John Lee Williams."

The little boy juggs his head down in his mama's lap and holler more now. His mama tells him go with the nurse, but he ain't thinking 'bout his mama. His mama tells him again, but he don't even hear her. His mama picks him up and takes him in there, and even when the white lady shuts the door I can still hear little old John Lee.

"I often wonder why the Lord let a child like that suffer," a lady says to my mama. The lady's sitting right in front of us on another bench. She's got on a white dress and a black sweater. She must be a nurse or something herself, I reckon.

"Not us to question," a man says.

"Sometimes I don't know if we shouldn't," the lady says.

"I know definitely we shouldn't," the man says. The man looks like a preacher. He's big and fat and he's got on a black suit. He's got a gold chain, too.

"Why?" the lady says.

"Why anything?" the preacher says.

"Yes," the lady says. "Why anything?"

"Not us to question," the preacher says.

The lady looks at the preacher a little while and looks at Mama again.

"And look like it's the poor who suffers the most," she says. "I don't understand it."

“Best not to even try,” the preacher says. “He works in mysterious ways—wonders to perform.”

Right then little John Lee bust out hollering, and everybody turn they head to listen.

“He’s not a good dentist,” the lady says. “Dr. Robillard is much better. But more expensive. That’s why most of the colored people come here. The white people go to Dr. Robillard. Y’all from Bayonne?”

“Down the river,” my mama says. And that’s all she go’n say, ’cause she don’t talk much. But the lady keeps on looking at her, and so she says, “Near Morgan.”

“I see,” the lady says.

7

“That’s the trouble with the black people in this country today,” somebody else says. This one here’s sitting on the same side me and Mama’s sitting, and he is kind of sitting in front of that preacher. He looks like a teacher or somebody that goes to college. He’s got on a suit, and he’s got a book that he’s been reading. “We don’t question is exactly our problem,” he says. “We should question and question and question—question everything.”

The preacher just looks at him a long time. He done put a toothpick or something in his mouth, and he just keeps on turning it and turning it. You can see he don’t like that boy with that book.

“Maybe you can explain what you mean,” he says.

“I said what I meant,” the boy says. “Question everything. Every stripe, every star, every word spoken. Everything.”

“It ’pears to me that this young lady and I was talking ’bout God, young man,” the preacher says.

“Question Him, too,” the boy says.

“Wait,” the preacher says. “Wait now.”

“You heard me right,” the boy says. “His existence as well as everything else. Everything.”

The preacher just looks across the room at the boy. You can see he’s getting madder and madder. But mad or no mad, the boy ain’t thinking ’bout him. He looks at that preacher just’s hard’s the preacher looks at him.

“Is this what they coming to?” the preacher says. “Is this what we educating them for?”

“You’re not educating me,” the boy says. “I wash dishes at night so that I can go to school in the day. So even the words you spoke need questioning.”

The preacher just looks at him and shakes his head.

“When I come in this room and seen you there with your book, I said to myself, ‘There’s an intelligent man.’ How wrong a person can be.”

“Show me one reason to believe in the existence of a God,” the boys says.

“My heart tells me,” the preacher says.

“My heart tells me,” the boys says. “My heart tells me.’ Sure, ‘My heart tells me.’ And as long as you listen to what your heart tells you, you will have only what the white man gives you and nothing more. Me, I don’t listen to my

heart. The purpose of the heart is to pump blood throughout the body, and nothing else.”

“Who’s your paw, boy?” the preacher says.

“Why?”

“Who is he?”

“He’s dead.”

“And your mon?”

“She’s in Charity Hospital with pneumonia. Half killed herself, working for nothing.”

“And ’cause he’s dead and she’s sick, you mad at the world?”

“I’m not mad at the world. I’m questioning the world. I’m questioning it with cold logic, sir. What do words like Freedom, Liberty, God, White, Colored mean? I want to know. That’s why *you* are sending us to school, to read and to ask questions. And because we ask these questions, you call us mad. No sir, it is not us who are mad.”

“You keep saying ‘us’?”

“‘Us.’ Yes—us. I’m not alone.”

The preacher just shakes his head. Then he looks at everybody in the room—everybody. Some of the people look down at the floor, keep from looking at him. I kind of look ’way myself, but soon’s I know he done turn his head, I look that way again.

“I’m sorry for you,” he says to the boy.

“Why?” the boy says. “Why not be sorry for yourself? Why are you so much better off than I am? Why aren’t you sorry for these other people in here? Why not be sorry for the lady who had to drag her child into the dentist office? Why not be sorry for the lady sitting on that bench over there? Be sorry for them. Not for me. Some way or the other I’m going to make it.”

“No, I’m sorry for you,” the preacher says.

“Of course, of course,” the boy says, nodding his head. “You’re sorry for me because I rock that pillar you’re leaning on.”

“You can’t ever rock the pillar I’m leaning on, young man. It’s stronger than anything man can ever do.” “You believe in God because a man told you to believe in God,” the boy says. “A white man told you to believe in God. And why? To keep you ignorant so he can keep his feet on your neck.”

“So now we the ignorant?” the preacher says.

“Yes,” the boy says. “Yes.” And he opens his book again.

The preacher just looks at him sitting there. The boy done forgot all about him. Everybody else make ’tend they done forgot the squabble, too.

Then I see that preacher getting up real slow. Preacher’s a great big old man and he got to brace himself to get up. He comes over where the boy is sitting. He just stands there a little while looking down at him, but the boy don’t raise his head.

“Get up, boy,” preacher says.

The boy looks up at him, then he shuts his book real slow and stands up. Preacher just hauls back and hit him in the face. The boy falls back ’gainst the wall, but he straightens himself up and looks right back at that preacher.

“You forgot the other cheek,” he says.

The preacher hauls back and hit him again on the other side. But this time the boy braces himself and don’t fall.

“That hasn’t changed a thing,” he says.

The preacher just looks at the boy. The preacher’s breathing real hard like he just run up a big hill. The boy sits down and opens his book again.

“I feel sorry for you,” the preacher says. “I never felt so sorry for a man before.”

The boy makes ’tend he don’t even hear that preacher. He keeps on reading his book. The preacher goes back and gets his hat off the chair.

“Excuse me,” he says to us. “I’ll come back some other time. Y’all, please excuse me.”

And he looks at the boy and goes out the room. The boy h’ist his hand up to his mouth one time to wipe ’way some blood. All the rest of the time he keeps on reading. And nobody else in there say a word.

8

Little John Lee and his mama come out the dentist office, and the nurse calls somebody else in. Then little bit later they come out, and the nurse calls another name. But fast’s she calls somebody in there, somebody else comes in the place where we sitting, and the room stays full.

The people coming in now, all of them wearing big coats. One of them says something ’bout sleeting, another one says he hope not. Another one says he think it ain’t nothing but rain. ’Cause, he says, rain can get awful cold this time of year.

All round the room they talking. Some of them talking to people right by them, some of them talking to people clear ’cross the room, some of them talking to anybody’ll listen. It’s a little bitty room, no bigger than us kitchen, and I can see everybody in there. The little old room’s full of smoke, ’cause you got two old men smoking pipes over by that side door. I think I feel my tooth thumping me some, and I hold my breath and wait. I wait and wait, but it don’t thump me no more. Thank God for that.

I feel like going to sleep, and I lean back ’gainst the wall. But I’m scared to go to sleep. Scared ’cause the nurse might call my name and I won’t hear her. And Mama might go to sleep, too, and she’ll be mad if neither one of us heard the nurse.

I look up at Mama. I love my mama. I love my mama. And when cotton come I’m go’n get her a new coat. And I ain’t go’n get a black one, either. I think I’m go’n get her a red one.

“They got some books over there,” I say. “Want read one of them?”

Mama looks at the books, but she don’t answer me.

“You got yourself a little man there,” the lady says.

Mama don’t say nothing to the lady, but she must’ve smiled, ’cause I seen the lady smiling back. The lady looks at me a little while, like she’s feeling sorry for me.

“You sure got that preacher out here in a hurry,” she says to that boy.

The boy looks up at her and looks in his book again. When I grow up I want be just like him. I want clothes like that and I want keep a book with me, too.

“You really don’t believe in God?” the lady says.

“No,” he says.

“But why?” the lady says.

“Because the wind is pink,” he says.

“What?” the lady says.

The boy don’t answer her no more. He just reads in his book.

“Talking ’bout the wind is pink,” that old lady says. She’s sitting on the same bench with the boy and she’s trying to look in his face. The boy makes ’tend the old lady ain’t even there. He just keeps on reading. “Wind is pink,” she says again. “Eh, Lord, what children go’n be saying next?”

The lady ’cross from us bust out laughing.

“That’s a good one,” she says. “The wind is pink. Yes sir, that’s a good one.”

“Don’t you believe the wind is pink?” the boy says. He keeps his head down in the book.

“Course I believe it, honey,” the lady says. “Course I do.” She looks at us and winks her eye. “And what color is grass, honey?”

“Grass? Grass is black.”

She bust out laughing again. The boy looks at her.

“Don’t you believe grass is black?” he says.

The lady quits her laughing and looks at him. Everybody else looking at him, too. The place quiet, quiet.

“Grass is green, honey,” the lady says. “It was green yesterday, it’s green today, and it’s go’n be green tomorrow.”

“How do you know it’s green?”

“I know because I know.”

“You don’t know it’s green,” the boy says. “You believe it’s green because someone told you it was green. If someone had told you it was black you’d believe it was black.”

“It’s green,” the lady says. “I know green when I see green.”

“Prove it’s green,” the boy says.

“Sure, now,” the lady says. “Don’t tell me it’s coming to that.”

“It’s coming to just that,” the boy says. “Words mean nothing. One means no more than the other.”

“That’s what it all coming to?” that old lady says. That old lady got on a turban and she got on two sweaters. She got a green sweater under a black sweater. I can see the green sweater ’cause some of the buttons on the other sweater’s missing.

“Yes ma’am,” the boy says. “Words mean nothing. Action is the only thing. Doing. That’s the only thing.” “Other words, you want the Lord to come down here and show Hissself to you?” she says.

“Exactly, ma’am,” he says.

“You don’t mean that, I’m sure?” she says.

"I do, ma'am," he says.

"Done, Jesus," the old lady says, shaking her head.

"I didn't go 'long with that preacher at first," the other lady says; "but now—I don't know. When a person say the grass is black, he's either a lunatic or something's wrong."

"Prove to me that it's green," the boy says.

"It's green because the people say it's green."

"Those same people say we're citizens of these United States," the boy says.

"I think I'm a citizen," the lady says.

"Citizens have certain rights," the boy says. "Name me one right that you have. One right, granted by the Constitution, that you can exercise in Bayonne."

The lady don't answer him. She just looks at him like she don't know what he's talking 'bout. I know I don't.

"Things changing," she says.

"Things are changing because some black men have begun to think with their brains and not their hearts," the boy says.

"You trying to say these people don't believe in God?"

"I'm sure some of them do. Maybe most of them do. But they don't believe that God is going to touch these white people's hearts and change things tomorrow. Things change through action. By no other way."

Everybody sit quiet and look at the boy. Nobody says a thing. Then the lady 'cross the room from me and Mama just shakes her head.

"Let's hope that not all your generation feel the same way you do," she says.

"Think what you please, it doesn't matter," the boy says. "But it will be men who listen to their heads and not their hearts who will see that your children have a better chance than you had."

"Let's hope they ain't all like you, though," the old lady says. "Done forgot the heart absolutely."

"Yes ma'am, I hope they aren't all like me," the boy says. "Unfortunately, I was born too late to believe in your God. Let's hope that the ones who come after will have your faith—if not in your God, then in something else, something definitely that they can lean on. I haven't anything. For me, the wind is pink, the grass is black."

9

The nurse comes in the room where we all sitting and waiting and says the doctor won't take no more patients till one o'clock this evening. My mama jumps up off the bench and goes up to the white lady.

"Nurse, I have to go back in the field this evening," she says.

"The doctor is treating his last patient now," the nurse says. "One o'clock this evening." "Can I at least speak to the doctor?" my mama asks.

"I'm his nurse," the lady says.

"My little boy's sick," my mama says. "Right now his tooth almost killing him."

The nurse looks at me. She's trying to make up her mind if to let me come in. I look at her real pitiful. The tooth ain't hurting me at all, but Mama say it is, so I make 'tend for her sake.

"This evening," the nurse says, and goes on back in the office.

"Don't feel 'jected, honey," the lady says to Mama. "I been round them a long time—they take you when they want to. If you was white, that's something else; but we the wrong color."

Mama don't say nothing to the lady, and me and her go outside and stand 'gainst the wall. It's cold out there. I can feel that wind going through my coat. Some of the other people come out of the room and go up the street. Me and Mama stand there a little while and we start walking. I don't know where we going. When we come to the other street we just stand there.

"You don't have to make water, do you?" Mama says.

"No, ma'am," I say.

We go on up the street. Walking real slow. I can tell Mama don't know where she's going. When we come to a store we stand there and look at the dummies. I look at a little boy wearing a brown overcoat. He's got on brown shoes, too. I look at my old shoes and look at his'n again. You wait till summer, I say.

Me and Mama walk away. We come up to another store and we stop and look at them dummies, too. Then we go on again. We pass a café where the white people in there eating. Mama tells me keep my eyes in front where they belong, but I can't help from seeing them people eat. My stomach starts to growling 'cause I'm hungry. When I see people eating, I get hungry; when I see a coat, I get cold.

A man whistles at my mama when we go by a filling station. She makes 'tend she don't even see him. I look back and I feel like hitting him in the mouth. If I was bigger, I say; if I was bigger, you'd see.

We keep on going. I'm getting colder and colder, but I don't say nothing. I feel that stuff running down my nose and I sniff.

"That rag," Mama says.

I get it out and wipe my nose. I'm getting cold all over now—my face, my hands, my feet, everything. We pass another little café, but this'n for white people, too, and we can't go in there, either. So we just walk. I'm so cold now I'm 'bout ready to say it. If I knowed where we was going I wouldn't be so cold, but I don't know where we going. We go, we go, we go. We walk clean out of Bayonne. Then we cross the street and we come back. Same thing I seen when I got off the bus this morning. Same old trees, same old walk, same old weeds, same old cracked pave—same old everything.

I sniff again.

"That rag," Mama says.

I wipe my nose real fast and juggle that handkerchief back in my pocket 'fore my hand gets too cold. I raise my head and I can see David's hardware store. When we come up to it, we go in. I don't know why, but I'm glad.

It's warm in there. It's so warm in there you don't ever want to leave. I look for the heater, and I see it over by them barrels. Three white men standing

round the heater talking in Creole. One of them comes over to see what my mama want.

“Got any axe handles?” she says.

Me, Mama and the white man start to the back, but Mama stops me when we come up to the heater. She and the white man go on. I hold my hands over the heater and look at them. They go all the way to the back, and I see the white man pointing to the axe handles ’gainst the wall. Mama takes one of them and shakes it like she’s trying to figure how much it weighs. Then she rubs her hand over it from one end to the other end. She turns it over and looks at the other side, then she shakes it again, and shakes her head and puts it back. She gets another one and she does it just like she did the first one, then she shakes her head. Then she gets a brown one and do it that, too. But she don’t like this one, either. Then she gets another one, but ’fore she shakes it or anything, she looks at me. Look like she’s trying to say something to me, but I don’t know what it is. All I know is I done got warm now and I’m feeling right smart better. Mama shakes this axe handle just like she did the others, and shakes her head and says something to the white man. The white man just looks at his pile of axe handles, and when Mama pass him to come to the front, the white man just scratch his head and follows her. She tells me come on and we go on out and start walking again.

We walk and walk, and no time at all I’m cold again. Look like I’m colder now ’cause I can still remember how good it was back there. My stomach growls and I suck it in to keep Mama from hearing it. She’s walking right ’side me, and it growls so loud you can hear it a mile. But Mama don’t say a word.

10

When we come up to the courthouse, I look at the clock. It’s got quarter to twelve. Mean we got another hour and a quarter to be out here in the cold. We go and stand ’side a building. Something hits my cap and I look up at the sky. Sleet’s falling.

I look at Mama standing there. I want stand close ’side her, but she don’t like that. She say that’s crybaby stuff. She say you got to stand for yourself, by yourself.

“Let’s go back to that office,” she says.

We cross the street. When we get to the dentist office I try to open the door, but I can’t. I twist and twist, but I can’t. Mama pushes me to the side and she twist the knob, but she can’t open the door, either. She turns ’way from the door. I look at her, but I don’t move and I don’t say nothing. I done seen her like this before and I’m scared of her.

“You hungry?” she says. She says it like she’s mad at me, like I’m the cause of everything.

“No, ma’am,” I say.

“You want eat and walk back, or you rather don’t eat and ride?”

“I ain’t hungry,” I say.

I ain’t just hungry, but I’m cold, too. I’m so hungry and cold I want to cry. And look like I’m getting colder and colder. My feet done got numb. I try to

work my toes, but I don't even feel them. Look like I'm go'n die. Look like I'm go'n stand right here and freeze to death. I think 'bout home. I think 'bout Val and Auntie and Ty and Louis and Walker. It's 'bout twelve o'clock and I know they eating dinner now. I can hear Ty making jokes. He done forgot 'bout getting up early this morning and right now he's probably making jokes. Always trying to make somebody laugh. I wish I was right there listening to him. Give anything in the world if I was home round the fire.

"Come on," Mama says.

We start walking again. My feet so numb I can't hardly feel them. We turn the corner and go on back up the street. The clock on the courthouse starts hitting for twelve.

The sleet's coming down plenty now. They hit the pave and bounce like rice. Oh, Lord; oh, Lord, I pray. Don't let me die, don't let me die, don't let me die, Lord.

11

Now I know where we going. We going back of town where the colored people eat. I don't care if I don't eat. I been hungry before. I can stand it. But I can't stand the cold.

I can see we go'n have a long walk. It's 'bout a mile down there. But I don't mind. I know when I get there I'm go'n warm myself. I think I can hold out. My hands numb in my pockets and my feet numb, too, but if I keep moving I can hold out. Just don't stop no more, that's all.

The sky's gray. The sleet keeps on falling. Falling like rain now—plenty, plenty. You can hear it hitting the pave. You can see it bouncing. Sometimes it bounces two times 'fore it settles.

We keep on going. We don't say nothing. We just keep on going, keep on going.

I wonder what Mama's thinking. I hope she ain't mad at me. When summer come I'm go'n pick plenty cotton and get her a coat. I'm go'n get her a red one.

I hope they'd make it summer all the time. I'd be glad if it was summer all the time—but it ain't. We got to have winter, too. Lord, I hate the winter. I guess everybody hate the winter.

I don't sniff this time. I get out my handkerchief and wipe my nose. My hands's so cold I can hardly hold the handkerchief.

I think we getting close, but we ain't there yet. I wonder where everybody is. Can't see a soul but us. Look like we the only two people moving round today. Must be too cold for the rest of the people to move round in.

I can hear my teeth. I hope they don't knock together too hard and make that bad one hurt. Lord, that's all I need, for that bad one to start off.

I hear a church bell somewhere. But today ain't Sunday. They must be ringing for a funeral or something.

I wonder what they doing at home. They must be eating. Monsieur Bayonne might be there with his guitar. One day Ty played with Monsieur Bayonne's guitar and broke one of the strings. Monsieur Bayonne was some

mad with Ty. He say Ty wasn't go'n ever 'mount to nothing. Ty can go just like Monsieur Bayonne when he ain't there. Ty can make everybody laugh when he starts to mocking Monsieur Bayonne.

I used to like to be with Mama and Daddy. We used to be happy. But they took him in the Army. Now, nobody happy no more.... I be glad when Daddy comes home.

Monsieur Bayonne say it wasn't fair for them to take Daddy and give Mama nothing and give us nothing. Auntie say, "Shhh, Etienne. Don't let them hear you talk like that." Monsieur Bayonne say, "It's God truth. What they giving his children? They have to walk three and a half miles to school hot or cold. That's anything to give for a paw? She's got to work in the field rain or shine just to make ends meet. That's anything to give for a husband?" Auntie say, "Shhh, Etienne, shhh." "Yes, you right," Monsieur Bayonne say. "Best don't say it in front of them now. But one day they go'n find out. One day." "Yes, I suppose so," Auntie say. "Then what, Rose Mary?" Monsieur Bayonne say. "I don't know, Etienne," Auntie say. "All we can do is us job, and leave everything else in His hand ..."

We getting closer, now. We getting closer. I can even see the railroad tracks.

We cross the tracks, and now I see the café. Just to get in there, I say. Just to get in there. Already I'm starting to feel little better.

12

We go in. Ahh, it's good. I look for the heater; there 'gainst the wall. One of them little brown ones. I just stand there and hold my hands over it. I can't open my hands too wide 'cause they almost froze.

Mama's standing right 'side me. She done unbuttoned her coat. Smoke rises out of the coat, and the coat smells like a wet dog.

I move to the side so Mama can have more room. She opens out her hands and rubs them together. I rub mine together, too, 'cause this keep them from hurting. If you let them warm too fast, they hurt you sure. But if you let them warm just little bit at a time, and you keep rubbing them, they be all right every time.

They got just two more people in the café. A lady back of the counter, and a man on this side the counter. They been watching us ever since we come in.

Mama gets out the handkerchief and count up the money. Both of us know how much money she's got there. Three dollars. No, she ain't got three dollars, 'cause she had to pay us way up here. She ain't got but two dollars and a half left. Dollar and a half to get my tooth pulled, and fifty cents for us to go back on, and fifty cents worth of salt meat.

She stirs the money round with her finger. Most of the money is change 'cause I can hear it rubbing together. She stirs it and stirs it. Then she looks at the door. It's still sleeting. I can hear it hitting 'gainst the wall like rice.

"I ain't hungry, Mama," I say.

"Got to pay them something for they heat," she says.

She takes a quarter out the handkerchief and ties the handkerchief up again. She looks over her shoulder at the people, but she still don't move. I hope she

don't spend the money. I don't want her spending it on me. I'm hungry, I'm almost starving I'm so hungry, but I don't want her spending the money on me.

She flips the quarter over like she's thinking. She's must be thinking 'bout us walking back home. Lord, I sure don't want walk home. If I thought it'd do any good to say something, I'd say it. But Mama makes up her own mind 'bout things.

She turns 'way from the heater right fast, like she better hurry up and spend the quarter 'fore she change her mind. I watch her go toward the counter. The man and the lady look at her, too. She tells the lady something and the lady walks away. The man keeps on looking at her. Her back's turned to the man, and she don't even know he's standing there.

The lady puts some cakes and a glass of milk on the counter. Then she pours up a cup of coffee and sets it 'side the other stuff. Mama pays her for the things and comes on back where I'm standing. She tells me sit down at the table 'gainst the wall.

The milk and the cakes's for me; the coffee's for Mama. I eat slow and I look at her. She's looking outside at the sleet. She's looking real sad. I say to myself, I'm go'n make all this up one day. You see, one day, I'm go'n make all this up. I want say it now; I want tell her how I feel right now; but Mama don't like for us to talk like that.

"I can't eat all this," I say.

They ain't got but just three little old cakes there. I'm so hungry right now, the Lord knows I can eat a hundred times three, but I want my mama to have one.

Mama don't even look my way. She knows I'm hungry, she knows I want it. I let it stay there a little while, then I get it and eat it. I eat just on my front teeth, though, 'cause if cake touch that back tooth I know what'll happen. Thank God it ain't hurt me at all today.

After I finish eating I see the man go to the juke box. He drops a nickel in it, then he just stand there a little while looking at the record. Mama tells me keep my eyes in front where they belong. I turn my head like she say, but then I hear the man coming toward us.

"Dance, pretty?" he says.

Mama gets up to dance with him. But 'fore you know it, she done grabbed the little man in the collar and done heaved him 'side the wall. He hit the wall so hard he stop the juke box from playing.

"Some pimp," the lady back of the counter says. "Some pimp."

The little man jumps up off the floor and starts toward my mama. 'Fore you know it, Mama done sprung open her knife and she's waiting for him.

"Come on," she says. "Come on. I'll gut you from your neighbo to your throat. Come on."

I go up to the little man to hit him, but Mama makes me come and stand 'side her. The little man looks at me and Mama and goes on back to the counter.

"Some pimp," the lady back of the counter says. "Some pimp." She starts laughing and pointing at the little man. Yes sir, you a pimp, all right. Yes sir-ree."

13

“Fasten that coat, let’s go,” Mama says.

“You don’t have to leave,” the lady says.

Mama don’t answer the lady, and we right out in the cold gain. I’m warm right now—my hands, my ears, my feet—but know this ain’t go’n last too long. It done sleet so much now you got ice everywhere you look.

We cross the railroad tracks, and soon’s we do, I get cold. That wind goes through this little old coat like it ain’t even there. I got on a shirt and a sweater under the coat, but that wind don’t pay them no mind. I look up and I can see we got a long way to go. I wonder if we go’n make it ’fore I get too cold.

We cross over to walk on the sidewalk. They got just one sidewalk back here, and it’s over there.

After we go just a little piece, I smell bread cooking. I look, then I see a baker shop. When we get closer, I can smell it more better. I shut my eyes and make ’tend I’m eating. But I keep them shut too long and I butt up ’gainst a telephone post. Mama grabs me and see if I’m hurt. I ain’t bleeding or nothing and she turns me loose.

I can feel I’m getting colder and colder, and I look up to see how far we still got to go. Uptown is ’way up yonder. A half mile more, I reckon. I try to think of something. They say think and you won’t get cold. I think of that poem, “Annabel Lee.” I ain’t been to school in so long—this bad weather—I reckon they done passed “Annabel Lee” by now. But passed it or not, I’m sure Miss Walker go’n make me recite it when I get there. That woman don’t never forget nothing. I ain’t never seen nobody like that in my life.

I’m still getting cold. “Annabel Lee” or no “Annabel Lee,” I’m still getting cold. But I can see we getting closer. We getting there gradually.

Soon’s we turn the corner, I see a little old white lady up in front of us. She’s the only lady on the street. She’s all in black and she’s got a long black rag over her head.

“Stop,” she says.

Me and Mama stop and look at her. She must be crazy to be out in all this bad weather. Ain’t got but a few other people out there, and all of them’s men.

“Y’all done ate?” she says.

“Just finish,” Mama says.

“Y’all must be cold then?” she says.

“We headed for the dentist,” Mama says. “We’ll warm up when we get there.”

“What dentist?” the old lady says. “Mr. Bassett?”

“Yes, ma’am,” Mama says.

“Come on in,” the old lady says. “I’ll telephone him and tell him y’all coming.”

Me and Mama follow the old lady in the store. It’s a little bitty store, and it don’t have much in there. The old lady takes off her head rag and folds it up.

“Helena?” somebody calls from the back.

“Yes, Alnest?” the old lady says.

“Did you see them?”

“They’re here. Standing beside me.”

“Good. Now you can stay inside.”

The old lady looks at Mama. Mama’s waiting to hear what she brought us in here for. I’m waiting for that, too.

“I saw y’all each time you went by,” she says. “I came out to catch you, but you were gone.”

“We went back of town,” Mama says.

“Did you eat?”

“Yes, ma’am.”

The old lady looks at Mama a long time, like she’s thinking Mama might be just saying that. Mama looks right back at her. The old lady looks at me to see what I have to say. I don’t say nothing. I sure ain’t going ’gainst my mama.

“There’s food in the kitchen,” she says to Mama. “I’ve been keeping it warm.”

Mama turns right around and starts for the door.

“Just a minute,” the old lady says. Mama stops. “The boy’ll have to work for it. It isn’t free.”

“We don’t take no handout,” Mama says.

“I’m not handing out anything,” the old lady says. “I need my garbage moved to the front. Ernest has a bad cold and can’t go out there.”

“James’ll move it for you,” Mama says.

“Not unless you eat,” the old lady says. “I’m old, but I have my pride, too, you know.”

Mama can see she ain’t go’n beat this old lady down, so she just shakes her head.

“All right,” the old lady says. “Come into the kitchen.”

She leads the way with that rag in her hand. The kitchen is a little bitty little old thing, too. The table and the stove just ’bout fill it up. They got a little room to the side. Somebody in there laying ’cross the bed—’cause I can see one of his feet. Must be the person she was talking to: Ernest or Alnest—something like that.

“Sit down,” the old lady says to Mama. “Not you,” she says to me. “You have to move the cans.” “Helena?” the man says in the other room.

“Yes, Alnest?” the old lady says.

“Are you going out there again?”

“I must show the boy where the garbage is, Alnest,” the old lady says.

“Keep that shawl over your head,” the old man says.

“You don’t have to remind me, Alnest. Come, boy,” the old lady says.

We go out in the yard. Little old back yard ain’t no bigger than the store or the kitchen. But it can sleet here just like it can sleet in any big back yard. And ’fore you know it, I’m trembling.

“There,” the old lady says, pointing to the cans. I pick up one of the cans and set it right back down. The can’s so light, I’m go’n see what’s inside of it.

“Here,” the old lady says. “Leave that can alone.”

I look back at her standing there in the door. She's got that black rag wrapped round her shoulders, and she's pointing one of her little old fingers at me.

"Pick it up and carry it to the front," she says. I go by her with the can, and she's looking at me all the time. I'm sure the can's empty. I'm sure she could've carried it herself—maybe both of them at the same time. "Set it on the sidewalk by the door and come back for the other one," she says.

I go and come back, and Mama looks at me when I pass her. I get the other can and take it to the front. It don't feel a bit heavier than that first one. I tell myself I ain't go'n be nobody's fool, and I'm go'n look inside this can to see just what I been hauling. First, I look up the street, then down the street. Nobody coming. Then I look over my shoulder toward the door. That little old lady done slipped up there quiet 's mouse, watching me again. Look like she knowed what I was go'n do.

"Ehh, Lord," she says. "Children, children. Come in here, boy, and go wash your hands."

I follow her in the kitchen. She points toward the bathroom, and I go in there and wash up. Little bitty old bathroom, but it's clean, clean. I don't use any of her towels; I wipe my hands on my pants legs.

When I come back in the kitchen, the old lady done dished up the food. Rice, gravy, meat—and she even got some lettuce and tomato in a saucer. She even got a glass of milk and a piece of cake there, too. It looks so good, I almost start eating 'fore I say my blessing.

"Helena?" the old man says.

"Yes, Alnest?"

"Are they eating?"

"Yes," she says.

"Good," he says. "Now you'll stay inside."

The old lady goes in there where he is and I can hear them talking. I look at Mama. She's eating slow like she's thinking. I wonder what's the matter now. I reckon she's thinking 'bout home.

The old lady comes back in the kitchen.

"I talked to Dr. Bassett's nurse," she says. "Dr. Bassett will take you as soon as you get there."

"Thank you, ma'am," Mama says.

"Perfectly all right," the old lady says. "Which one is it?"

Mama nods toward me. The old lady looks at me real sad. I look sad, too.

"You're not afraid, are you?" she says.

"No, ma'am," I say.

"That's a good boy," the old lady says. "Nothing to be afraid of. Dr. Bassett will not hurt you."

When me and Mama get through eating, we thank the old lady again.

"Helena, are they leaving?" the old man says.

"Yes, Alnest."

"Tell them I say good-bye."

"They can hear you, Alnest."

“Good-bye both mother and son,” the old man says. “And may God be with you.”

Me and Mama tell the old man good-bye, and we follow the old lady in the front room. Mama opens the door to go out, but she stops and comes back in the store.

“You sell salt meat?” she says.

“Yes.”

“Give me two bits worth.”

“That isn’t very much salt meat,” the old lady says.

“That’s all I have,” Mama says.

The old lady goes back of the counter and cuts a big piece off the chunk. Then she wraps it up and puts it in a paper bag.

“Two bits,” she says.

“That looks like awful lot of meat for a quarter,” Mama says.

“Two bits,” the old lady says. “I’ve been selling salt meat behind this counter twenty-five years. I think I know what I’m doing.”

“You got a scale there,” Mama says.

“What?” the old lady says.

“Weigh it,” Mama says.

“What?” the old lady says. “Are you telling me how to run my business?”

“Thanks very much for the food,” Mama says.

“Just a minute,” the old lady says.

“James,” Mama says to me. I move toward the door.

“Just one minute, I said,” the old lady says.

Me and Mama stop again and look at her. The old lady takes the meat out of the bag and unwraps it and cuts ’bout half of it off. Then she wraps it up again and jugs it back in the bag and gives the bag to Mama. Mama lays the quarter on the counter.

“Your kindness will never be forgotten,” she says. “James,” she says to me.

We go out, and the old lady comes to the door to look at us. After we go a little piece I look back, and she’s still there watching us.

The sleet’s coming down heavy, heavy now, and I turn up my coat collar to keep my neck warm. My mama tells me turn it right back down.

“You not a bum,” she says. “You a man.”

Nadine Gordimer

Once upon a Time*

From Jump and Other Stories by Nadine Gordimer. Copyright © 1991 by Felix Licensing, B. V. Reprinted by permission of Farrar, Straus and Giroux, LLC and Penguin Books Canada Limited.

*This selection is featured in the model student essay in Chapter 9 and Chapter 10.

Someone has written to ask me to contribute to an anthology of stories for children. I reply that I don't write children's stories; and he writes back that at a recent congress/book fair/seminar a certain novelist said every writer ought to write at least one story for children. I think of sending a postcard saying I don't accept that I "ought" to write anything.

And then last night I woke up—or rather was awakened without knowing what had roused me.

A voice in the echo-chamber of the subconscious?

A sound.

A creaking of the kind made by the weight carried by one foot after another along a wooden floor. I listened. I felt the apertures of my ears distend with concentration. Again: the creaking. I was waiting for it; waiting to hear if it indicated that feet were moving from room to room, coming up the passage—to my door. I have no burglar bars, no gun under the pillow, but I have the same fears as people who do take these precautions, and my windowpanes are thin as rime, could shatter like a wineglass. A woman was murdered (how do they put it) in broad daylight in a house two blocks away, last year, and the fierce dogs who guarded an old widower and his collection of antique clocks were strangled before he was knifed by a casual laborer he had dismissed without pay.

I was staring at the door, making it out in my mind rather than seeing it, in the dark. I lay quite still—a victim already—the arrhythmia of my heart was fleeing, knocking this way and that against its body-cage. How finely tuned the senses are, just out of rest, sleep! I could never listen intently as that in the distractions of the day; I was reading every faintest sound, identifying and classifying its possible threat.

But I learned that I was to be neither threatened nor spared. There was no human weight pressing on the boards, the creaking was a buckling, an epicenter of stress. I was in it. The house that surrounds me while I sleep is built on undermined ground; far beneath my bed, the floor, the house's foundations, the stopes and passages of gold mines have hollowed the rock, and when some face trembles, detaches and falls, three thousand feet below, the whole house shifts slightly, bringing uneasy strain to the balance and counterbalance of brick, cement, wood and glass that hold it as a structure around me. The misbeats of my heart tailed off like the last muffled flourishes on one of the wooden xylophones made by the Chopi and Tsonga* migrant miners who might have been down there, under me in the earth at that moment. The stope where the fall was could have been disused, dripping water from its ruptured veins; or men might now be interred there in the most profound of tombs.

I couldn't find a position in which my mind would let go of my body—release me to sleep again. So I began to tell myself a story; a bedtime story.

In a house, in a suburb, in a city, there were a man and his wife who loved each other very much and were living happily ever after. They had a little boy, and they loved him very much. They had a cat and a dog that the little boy

*Chopi and Tsonga: two peoples from Mozambique, northeast of South Africa.

loved very much. They had a car and a caravan trailer for holidays, and a swimming-pool which was fenced so that the little boy and his playmates would not fall in and drown. They had a housemaid who was absolutely trustworthy and an itinerant gardener who was highly recommended by the neighbors. For when they began to live happily ever after they were warned, by that wise old witch, the husband's mother, not to take on anyone off the street. They were inscribed in a medical benefit society, their pet dog was licensed, they were insured against fire, flood damage and theft, and subscribed to the local Neighborhood Watch, which supplied them with a plaque for their gates lettered YOU HAVE BEEN WARNED over the silhouette of a would-be intruder. He was masked; it could not be said if he was black or white, and therefore proved the property owner was no racist.

It was not possible to insure the house, the swimming-pool or the car against riot damage. There were riots, but these were outside the city, where people of another color were quartered. These people were not allowed into the suburb except as reliable housemaids and gardeners, so there was nothing to fear, the husband told the wife. Yet she was afraid that some day such people might come up the street and tear off the plaque YOU HAVE BEEN WARNED and open the gates and stream in . . . Nonsense, my dear, said the husband, there are police and soldiers and tear-gas and guns to keep them away. But to please her—for he loved her very much and buses were being burned, cars stoned, and schoolchildren shot by the police in those quarters out of sight and hearing of the suburb—he had electronically controlled gates fitted. Anyone who pulled off the sign YOU HAVE BEEN WARNED and tried to open the gates would have to announce his intentions by pressing a button and speaking into a receiver relayed to the house. The little boy was fascinated by the device and used it as a walkie-talkie in cops and robbers play with his small friends.

The riots were suppressed, but there were many burglaries in the suburb and somebody's trusted housemaid was tied up and shut in a cupboard by thieves while she was in charge of her employers' house. The trusted housemaid of the man and wife and little boy was so upset by this misfortune befalling a friend left, as she herself often was, with responsibility for the possessions of the man and his wife and the little boy that she implored her employers to have burglar bars attached to the doors and windows of the house, and an alarm system installed. The wife said, She is right, let us take heed of her advice. So from every window and door in the house where they were living happily ever after they now saw the trees and sky through bars, and when the little boy's pet cat tried to climb in by the fanlight to keep him company in his little bed at night, as it customarily had done, it set off the alarm keening through the house.

The alarm was often answered—it seemed—by other burglar alarms, in other houses, that had been triggered by pet cats or nibbling mice. The alarms called to one another across the gardens in shrills and bleats and wails that everyone soon became accustomed to, so that the din roused the inhabitants of the suburb no more than the croak of frogs and musical grating of cicadas' legs. Under cover of the electronic harpies' discourse intruders sawed the iron bars and broke into homes, taking away hi-fi equipment, television sets, cassette players,

cameras and radios, jewelry and clothing, and sometimes were hungry enough to devour everything in the refrigerator or paused audaciously to drink the whiskey in the cabinets or patio bars. Insurance companies paid no compensation for single malt,* a loss made keener by the property owner's knowledge that the thieves wouldn't even have been able to appreciate what it was they were drinking.

Then the time came when many of the people who were not trusted housemaids and gardeners hung about the suburb because they were unemployed. Some importuned for a job: weeding or painting a roof; anything, *baas*,* madam. But the man and his wife remembered the warning about taking on anyone off the street. Some drank liquor and fouled the street with discarded bottles. Some begged, waiting for the man or his wife to drive the car out of the electronically operated gates. They sat about with their feet in the gutters, under the jacaranda trees that made a green tunnel of the street—for it was a beautiful suburb, spoilt only by their presence—and sometimes they fell asleep lying right before the gates in the midday sun. The wife could never see anyone go hungry. She sent the trusted housemaid out with bread and tea, but the trusted housemaid said these were loafers and *tsotsis*,* who would come and tie her and shut her in a cupboard. The husband said, She's right. Take heed of her advice. You only encourage them with your bread and tea. They are looking for their chance ... And he brought the little boy's tricycle from the garden into the house every night, because if the house was surely secure, once locked and with the alarm set, someone might still be able to climb over the wall or the electronically closed gates into the garden.

You are right, said the wife, then the wall should be higher. And the wise old witch, the husband's mother, paid for the extra bricks as her Christmas present to her son and his wife—the little boy got a Space Man outfit and a book of fairy tales.

But every week there were more reports of intrusion: in broad daylight and the dead of night, in the early hours of the morning, and even in the lovely summer twilight—a certain family was at dinner while the bedrooms were being ransacked upstairs. The man and his wife, talking of the latest armed robbery in the suburb, were distracted by the sight of the little boy's pet cat effortlessly arriving over the seven-foot wall, descending first with a rapid bracing of extended forepaws down on the sheer vertical surface, and then a graceful launch, landing with swishing tail within the property. The whitewashed wall was marked with the cat's comings and goings; and on the street side of the wall there were larger red-earth smudges that could have been made by the kind of broken running shoes, seen on the feet of unemployed loiterers, that had no innocent destination.

**Single malt*: an expensive Scotch whiskey

**baas*: boss

**tsotsis*: hooligans

When the man and wife and little boy took the pet dog for its walk round the neighborhood streets they no longer paused to admire this show of roses or that perfect lawn; these were hidden behind an array of different varieties of security fences, walls and devices. The man, wife, little boy and dog passed a remarkable choice: there was the low-cost option of pieces of broken glass embedded in cement along the top of walls, there were iron grilles ending in lance-points, there were attempts at reconciling the aesthetics of prison architecture with the Spanish Villa style (spikes painted pink) and with the plaster urns of neoclassical façades (twelve-inch pikes finned like zigzags of lightning and painted pure white). Some walls had a small board affixed, giving the name and telephone number of the firm responsible for the installation of the devices. While the little boy and the pet dog raced ahead, the husband and wife found themselves comparing the possible effectiveness of each style against its appearance; and after several weeks when they paused before this barricade or that without needing to speak, both came out with the conclusion that only one was worth considering. It was the ugliest but the most honest in its suggestion of the pure concentration-camp style, no frills, all evident efficacy. Placed the length of walls, it consisted of a continuous coil of stiff and shining metal serrated into jagged blades, so that there would be no way of climbing over it and no way through its tunnel without getting entangled in its fangs. There would be no way out, only a struggle getting bloodier and bloodier, a deeper and sharper hooking and tearing of flesh. The wife shuddered to look at it. You're right, said the husband, anyone would think twice ... And they took heed of the advice on a small board fixed to the wall: Consult DRAGON'S TEETH The People For Total Security.

Next day a gang of workmen came and stretched the razor-bladed coils all round the walls of the house where the husband and wife and little boy and pet dog and cat were living happily ever after. The sunlight flashed and slashed, off the serrations, the cornice of razor thorns encircled the home, shining. The husband said, Never mind. It will weather. The wife said, You're wrong. They guarantee it's rust-proof. And she waited until the little boy had run off to play before she said, I hope the cat will take heed ... The husband said, Don't worry, my dear, cats always look before they leap. And it was true that from that day on the cat slept in the little boy's bed and kept to the garden, never risking a try at breaching security.

One evening, the mother read the little boy to sleep with a fairy story from the book the wise old witch had given him at Christmas. Next day he pretended to be the Prince who braves the terrible thicket of thorns to enter the palace and kiss the Sleeping Beauty back to life: he dragged a ladder to the wall, the shining coiled tunnel was just wide enough for his little body to creep in, and with the first fixing of its razor-teeth in his knees and hands and head he screamed and struggled deeper into its tangle. The trusted housemaid and the itinerant gardener, whose "day" it was, came running, the first to see and to scream with him, and the itinerant gardener tore his hands trying to get at the little boy. Then the man and his wife burst wildly into the garden and for some reason (the cat, probably) the alarm set up wailing against the screams while the

bleeding mass of the little boy was hacked out of the security coil with saws, wire-cutters, choppers, and they carried it—the man, the wife, the hysterical trusted housemaid and the weeping gardener—into the house.

Chapter 4

Nathaniel Hawthorne

Young Goodman Brown*

From The Complete Novels and Selected Tales of Nathaniel Hawthorne, ed. Norman Holmes Pierson (New York: Random House, Modern Library, 1937), pp. 1033–42.

Young Goodman Brown came forth at sunset into the street at Salem village; but put his head back, after crossing the threshold, to exchange a parting kiss with his young wife. And Faith, as the wife was aptly named, thrust her own pretty head into the street, letting the wind play with the pink ribbons of her cap while she called to Goodman Brown.

“Dearest heart,” whispered she, softly and rather sadly, when her lips were close to his ear, “prithce put off your journey until sunrise and sleep in your own bed to-night. A lone woman is troubled with such dreams and such thoughts that she’s afraid of herself sometimes. Pray tarry with me this night, dear husband, of all nights in the year.”

“My love and my Faith,” replied young Goodman Brown, “of all nights in the year, this one night must I tarry away from thee. My journey, as thou callest it, forth and back again, must needs be done ’twixt now and sunrise. What, my sweet, pretty wife, dost thou doubt me already, and we but three months married?”

“Then God bless you!” said Faith, with the pink ribbons; “and may you find all well when you come back.”

“Amen!” cried Goodman Brown. “Say thy prayers, dear Faith, and go to bed at dusk, and no harm will come to thee.”

So they parted; and the young man pursued his way until, being about to turn the corner by the meeting-house, he looked back and saw the head of Faith still peeping after him with a melancholy air, in spite of her pink ribbons.

“Poor little Faith!” thought he, for his heart smote him. “What a wretch am I to leave her on such an errand! She talks of dreams, too. Me-thought as she spoke there was trouble in her face, as if a dream had warned her what work is to be done tonight. But no, no; ’t would kill her to think it. Well, she’s a blessed angel on earth; and after this one night I’ll cling to her skirts and follow her to heaven.”

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 2.

With this excellent resolve for the future, Goodman Brown felt himself justified in making more haste on his present evil purpose. He had taken a dreary road, darkened by all the gloomiest trees of the forest, which barely stood aside to let the narrow path creep through, and closed immediately behind. It was all as lonely as could be; and there is this peculiarity in such a solitude, that the traveller knows not who may be concealed by the innumerable trunks and the thick boughs overhead; so that with lonely footsteps he may yet be passing through an unseen multitude.

"There may be a devilish Indian behind every tree," said Goodman Brown to himself; and he glanced fearfully behind him as he added, "What if the devil himself should be at my very elbow!" His head being turned back, he passed a crook of the road, and, looking forward again, beheld the figure of a man, in grave and decent attire, seated at the foot of an old tree. He arose at Goodman Brown's approach and walked onward side by side with him.

"You are late, Goodman Brown," said he. "The clock of the Old South was striking as I came through Boston, and that is full fifteen minutes ago."

"Faith kept me back a while," replied the young man, with a tremor in his voice, caused by the sudden appearance of his companion, though not wholly unexpected.

It was now deep dusk in the forest, and deepest in that part of it where these two were journeying. As nearly as could be discerned, the second traveller was about fifty years old, apparently in the same rank of life as Goodman Brown, and bearing a considerable resemblance to him, though perhaps more in expression than features. Still they might have been taken for father and son. And yet, though the elder person was as simply clad as the younger, and as simple in manner too, he had an indescribable air of one who knew the world, and who would not have felt abashed at the governor's dinner table or in King William's court, were it possible that his affairs should call him thither. But the only thing about him that could be fixed upon as remarkable was his staff, which bore the likeness of a great black snake, so curiously wrought that it might almost be seen to twist and wriggle itself like a living serpent. This, of course, must have been an ocular deception, assisted by the uncertain light.

"Come, Goodman Brown," cried his fellow-traveller, "this is a dull pace for the beginning of a journey. Take my staff, if you are so soon weary."

"Friend," said the other, exchanging his slow pace for a full stop, "having kept covenant by meeting thee here, it is my purpose now to return whence I came. I have scruples touching the matter thou wot'st of."

"Sayest thou so?" replied he of the serpent, smiling apart. "Let us walk on, nevertheless, reasoning as we go; and if I convince thee not thou shalt turn back. We are but a little way in the forest yet."

"Too far! too far!" exclaimed the goodman, unconsciously resuming his walk. "My father never went into the woods on such an errand, nor his father before him. We have been a race of honest men and good Christians since the days of the martyrs; and shall I be the first of the name of Brown that ever took this path and kept"—

"Such company, thou wouldst say," observed the elder person, interpreting his pause. "Well said, Goodman Brown! I have been as well acquainted with

your family as with ever a one among the Puritans; and that's no trifle to say. I helped your grandfather, the constable, when he lashed the Quaker woman so smartly through the streets of Salem; and it was I that brought your father a pitch-pine knot, kindled at my own hearth, to set fire to an Indian village, in King Philip's war. They were my good friends, both; and many a pleasant walk have we had along this path, and returned merrily after midnight. I would fain be friends with you for their sake."

"If it be as thou sayest," replied Goodman Brown, "I marvel they never spoke of these matters; or, verily, I marvel not, seeing that the least rumor of the sort would have driven them from New England. We are a people of prayer, and good works to boot, and abide no such wickedness."

"Wickedness or not," said the traveller with the twisted staff, "I have a very general acquaintance here in New England. The deacons of many a church have drunk the communion wine with me; the selectmen of divers towns make me their chairman; and a majority of the Great and General Court are firm supporters of my interest. The governor and I, too—But these are state secrets."

"Can this be so?" cried Goodman Brown, with a stare of amazement at his undisturbed companion. "Howbeit, I have nothing to do with the governor and council; they have their own ways, and are no rule for a simple husbandman like me. But, were I to go on with thee, how should I meet the eye of that good old man, our minister, at Salem village? Oh, his voice would make me tremble both Sabbath day and lecture day."

Thus far the elder traveller had listened with due gravity; but now burst into a fit of irrepressible mirth, shaking himself so violently that his snake-like staff actually seemed to wriggle in sympathy.

"Ha! ha! ha!" shouted he again and again; then composing himself, "Well, go on, Goodman Brown, go on; but, prithee, don't kill me with laughing."

"Well, then, to end the matter at once," said Goodman Brown, considerably nettled, "there is my wife, Faith. It would break her dear little heart; and I'd rather break my own."

"Nay, if that be the case," answered the other, "e'en go thy ways, Goodman Brown. I would not for twenty old women like the one hobbling before us that Faith should come to any harm."

As he spoke he pointed his staff at a female figure on the path, in whom Goodman Brown recognized a very pious and exemplary dame, who had taught him his catechism in youth, and was still his moral and spiritual adviser, jointly with the minister and Deacon Gookin.

"A marvel, truly, that Goody Cloyse should be so far in the wilderness at nightfall," said he. "But with your leave, friend, I shall take a cut through the woods until we have left this Christian woman behind. Being a stranger to you, she might ask whom I was consorting with and whither I was going."

"Be it so," said his fellow-traveller. "Betake you to the woods, and let me keep the path."

Accordingly the young man turned aside, but took care to watch his companion, who advanced softly along the road until he had come within a staff's length of the old dame. She, meanwhile, was making the best of her way, with

singular speed for so aged a woman, and mumbling some indistinct words—a prayer, doubtless—as she went. The traveller put forth his staff and touched her withered neck with what seemed the serpent’s tail.

“The devil!” screamed the pious old lady.

“Then Goody Cloyse knows her old friend?” observed the traveller, confronting her and leaning on his writhing stick.

“Ah, forsooth, and is it your worship indeed?” cried the good dame. “Yea, truly is it, and in the very image of my old gossip, Goodman Brown, the grandfather of the silly fellow that now is. But—would your worship believe it?—my broomstick hath strangely disappeared, stolen, as I suspect, by that unhangd witch, Goody Cory, and that, too, when I was all anointed with the juice of smallage, and cinquefoil, and wolf’s bane”—

“Mingled with fine wheat and the fat of a new-born babe,” said the shape of old Goodman Brown.

“Ah, your worship knows the recipe,” cried the old lady, cackling aloud. “So, as I was saying, being all ready for the meeting, and no horse to ride on, I made up my mind to foot it; for they tell me there is a nice young man to be taken into communion to-night. But now your good worship will lend me your arm, and we shall be there in a twinkling.”

“That can hardly be,” answered her friend. “I may not spare you my arm, Goody Cloyse; but here is my staff, if you will.”

So saying, he threw it down at her feet, where, perhaps, it assumed life, being one of the rods which its owner had formerly lent to the Egyptian magi. Of this fact, however, Goodman Brown could not take cognizance. He had cast up his eyes in astonishment, and, looking down again, beheld neither Goody Cloyse nor the serpentine staff, but his fellow-traveller alone, who waited for him as calmly as if nothing had happened.

“That old woman taught me my catechism,” said the young man; and there was a world of meaning in this simple comment.

They continued to walk onward, while the elder traveller exhorted his companion to make good speed and persevere in the path, discoursing so aptly that his arguments seemed rather to spring up in the bosom of his auditor than to be suggested by himself. As they went, he plucked a branch of maple to serve for a walking stick, and began to strip it of the twigs and little boughs, which were wet with evening dew. The moment his fingers touched them they became strangely withered and dried up as with a week’s sunshine. Thus the pair proceeded, at a good free pace, until suddenly, in a gloomy hollow of the road, Goodman Brown sat himself down on the stump of a tree and refused to go any farther.

“Friend,” said he, stubbornly, “my mind is made up. Not another step will I budge on this errand. What if a wretched old woman do choose to go to the devil when I thought she was going to heaven: is that any reason why I should quit my dear Faith and go after her?”

“You will think better of this by and by,” said his acquaintance, composedly. “Sit here and rest yourself a while; and when you feel like moving again, there is my staff to help you along.”

Without more words, he threw his companion the maple stick, and was as speedily out of sight as if he had vanished into the deepening gloom. The young man sat a few moments by the roadside, applauding himself greatly, and thinking with how clear a conscience he should meet the minister in his morning walk, nor shrink from the eye of good old Deacon Gookin. And what calm sleep would be his that very night, which was to have been spent so wickedly, but so purely and sweetly now, in the arms of Faith! Amidst these pleasant and praiseworthy meditations, Goodman Brown heard the tramp of horses along the road, and deemed it advisable to conceal himself within the verge of the forest, conscious of the guilty purpose that had brought him thither, though now so happily turned from it.

On came the hoof tramps and the voices of the riders, two grave old voices, conversing soberly as they drew near. These mingled sounds appeared to pass along the road, within a few yards of the young man's hiding-place; but, owing doubtless to the depth of the gloom at that particular spot, neither the travellers nor their steeds were visible. Though their figures brushed the small boughs by the wayside, it could not be seen that they intercepted, even for a moment, the faint gleam from the strip of bright sky athwart which they must have passed. Goodman Brown alternately crouched and stood on tiptoe, pulling aside the branches and thrusting forth his head as far as he durst without discerning so much as a shadow. It vexed him the more, because he could have sworn, were such a thing possible, that he recognized the voices of the minister and Deacon Gookin, jogging along quietly, as they were wont to do, when bound to some ordination or ecclesiastical council. While yet within hearing, one of the riders stopped to pluck a switch.

"Of the two, reverend sir," said the voice like the deacon's, "I had rather miss an ordination dinner than to-night's meeting. They tell me that some of our community are to be here from Falmouth and beyond, and others from Connecticut and Rhode Island, besides several of the Indian powwows, who, after their fashion, know almost as much devilry as the best of us. Moreover, there is a goodly young woman to be taken into communion."

"Mighty well, Deacon Gookin!" replied the solemn old tones of the minister. "Spur up, or we shall be late. Nothing can be done, you know, until I get on the ground."

The hoofs clattered again; and the voices, talking so strangely in the empty air, passed on through the forest, where no church had ever been gathered or solitary Christian prayed. Whither, then, could these holy men be journeying so deep into the heathen wilderness? Young Goodman Brown caught hold of a tree for support, being ready to sink down on the ground, faint and overburdened with the heavy sickness of his heart. He looked up to the sky, doubting whether there really was a heaven above him. Yet there was the blue arch, and the stars brightening in it.

"With heaven above and Faith below, I will yet stand firm against the devil!" cried Goodman Brown.

While he still gazed upward into the deep arch of the firmament and had lifted his hands to pray, a cloud, though no wind was stirring, hurried across

the zenith and hid the brightening stars. The blue sky was still visible, except directly overhead, where this black mass of cloud was sweeping swiftly northward. Aloft in the air, as if from the depths of the cloud, came a confused and doubtful sound of voices. Once the listener fancied that he could distinguish the accents of towns-people of his own, men and women, both pious and ungodly, many of whom he had met at the communion table, and had seen others rioting at the tavern. The next moment, so indistinct were the sounds, he doubted whether he had heard aught but the murmur of the old forest, whispering without a wind. Then came a stronger swell of those familiar tones, heard daily in the sunshine at Salem village, but never until now from a cloud of night. There was one voice of a young woman, uttering lamentations, yet with an uncertain sorrow, and entreating for some favor, which, perhaps, it would grieve her to obtain; and all the unseen multitude, both saints and sinners, seemed to encourage her onward.

“Faith!” shouted Goodman Brown, in a voice of agony and desperation; and the echoes of the forest mocked him, crying, “Faith! Faith!” as if bewildered wretches were seeking her all through the wilderness.

The cry of grief, rage, and terror was yet piercing the night, when the unhappy husband held his breath for a response. There was a scream, drowned immediately in a louder murmur of voices, fading into far-off laughter, as the dark cloud swept away, leaving the clear and silent sky above Goodman Brown. But something fluttered lightly down through the air and caught on the branch of a tree. The young man seized it, and beheld a pink ribbon.

“My Faith is gone!” cried he, after one stupefied moment. “There is no good on earth; and sin is but a name. Come, devil; for to thee is this world given.”

And, maddened with despair, so that he laughed loud and long, did Goodman Brown grasp his staff and set forth again, at such a rate that he seemed to fly along the forest path rather than to walk or run. The road grew wilder and drearier and more faintly traced, and vanished at length, leaving him in the heart of the dark wilderness, still rushing onward with the instinct that guides mortal man to evil. The whole forest was peopled with frightful sounds—the creaking of the trees, the howling of wild beasts, and the yell of Indians; while sometimes the wind tolled like a distant church bell, and sometimes gave a broad roar around the traveller, as if all Nature were laughing him to scorn. But he was himself the chief horror of the scene, and shrank not from its other horrors.

“Ha! ha! ha!” roared Goodman Brown when the wind laughed at him. “Let us hear which will laugh loudest. Think not to frighten me with your devilry. Come witch, come wizard, come Indian powwow, come devil himself, and here comes Goodman Brown. You may as well fear him as he fear you.”

In truth, all through the haunted forest there could be nothing more frightful than the figure of Goodman Brown. On he flew among the black pines, brandishing his staff with frenzied gestures, now giving vent to an inspiration of horrid blasphemy, and now shouting forth such laughter as set all the echoes of the forest laughing like demons around him. The fiend in his own shape is less hideous than when he rages in the breast of man. Thus sped the demoniac on his

course, until, quivering among the trees, he saw a red light before him, as when the felled trunks and branches of a clearing have been set on fire, and throw up their lurid blaze against the sky, at the hour of midnight. He paused, in a lull of the tempest that had driven him onward, and heard the swell of what seemed a hymn, rolling solemnly from a distance with the weight of many voices. He knew the tune; it was a familiar one in the choir of the village meeting-house. The verse died heavily away, and was lengthened by a chorus, not of human voices, but of all the sounds of the benighted wilderness pealing in awful harmony together. Goodman Brown cried out, and his cry was lost to his own ear by its unison with the cry of the desert.

In the interval of silence he stole forward until the light glared full upon his eyes. At one extremity of an open space, hemmed in by the dark wall of the forest, arose a rock, bearing some rude, natural resemblance either to an altar or a pulpit, and surrounded by four blazing pines, their tops aflame, their stems untouched, like candles at an evening meeting. The mass of foliage that had overgrown the summit of the rock was all on fire, blazing high into the night and fitfully illuminating the whole field. Each pendent twig and leafy festoon was in a blaze. As the red light arose and fell, a numerous congregation alternately shone forth, then disappeared in shadow, and again grew, as it were, out of the darkness, peopling the heart of the solitary woods at once.

“A grave and dark-clad company,” quoth Goodman Brown.

In truth they were such. Among them, quivering to and fro between gloom and splendor, appeared faces that would be seen next day at the council board of the province, and others which, Sabbath after Sabbath, looked devoutly heavenward, and benignantly over the crowded pews, from the holiest pulpits in the land. Some affirm that the lady of the governor was there. At least there were high dames well known to her, and wives of honored husbands, and widows, a great multitude, and ancient maidens, all of excellent repute, and fair young girls, who trembled lest their mothers should espy them. Either the sudden gleams of light flashing over the obscure field bedazzled Goodman Brown, or he recognized a score of the church members of Salem village famous for their especial sanctity. Good old Deacon Gookin had arrived, and waited at the skirts of that venerable saint, his revered pastor. But, irreverently consorting with these grave, reputable, and pious people, these elders of the church, these chaste dames and dewy virgins, there were men of dissolute lives and women of spotted fame, wretches given over to all mean and filthy vice, and suspected even of horrid crimes. It was strange to see that the good shrank not from the wicked, nor were the sinners abashed by the saints. Scattered also among their pale-faced enemies were the Indian priests, or powwows, who had often scared their native forest with more hideous incantations than any known to English witchcraft.

“But where is Faith?” thought Goodman Brown; and, as hope came into his heart, he trembled.

Another verse of the hymn arose, a slow and mournful strain, such as the pious love, but joined to words which expressed all that our nature can conceive of sin, and darkly hinted at far more. Unfathomable to mere mortals is the lore of fiends. Verse after verse was sung; and still the chorus of the desert swelled

between like the deepest tone of a mighty organ; and with the final peal of that dreadful anthem there came a sound, as if the roaring wind, the rushing streams, the howling beasts, and every other voice of the unconcerted wilderness were mingling and according with the voice of guilty man in homage to the prince of all. The four blazing pines threw up a loftier flame, and obscurely discovered shapes and visages of horror on the smoke wreaths above the impious assembly. At the same moment the fire on the rock shot redly forth and formed a glowing arch above its base, where now appeared a figure. With reverence be it spoken, the figure bore no slight similitude, both in garb and manner, to some grave divine of the New England churches.

“Bring forth the converts!” cried a voice that echoed through the field and rolled into the forest.

At the word, Goodman Brown stepped forth from the shadow of the trees and approached the congregation, with whom he felt a loathful brotherhood by the sympathy of all that was wicked in his heart. He could have well-nigh sworn that the shape of his own dead father beckoned him to advance, looking downward from a smoke wreath, while a woman, with dim features of despair, threw out her hand to warn him back. Was it his mother? But he had no power to retreat one step, not to resist, even in thought, when the minister and good old Deacon Gookin seized his arms and led him to the blazing rock. Thither came also the slender form of a veiled female, led between Goody Cloyse, that pious teacher of the catechism, and Martha Carrier, who had received the devil’s promise to be queen of hell. A rampant hag was she. And there stood the proselytes beneath the canopy of fire.

“Welcome, my children,” said the dark figure, “to the communion of your race. Ye have found thus young your nature and your destiny. My children, look behind you!” They turned; and flashing forth, as it were, in a sheet of flame, the fiend worshippers were seen; the smile of welcome gleamed darkly on every visage.

“There,” resumed the sable form, “are all whom ye have revered from youth. Ye deemed them holier than yourselves, and shrank from your own sin, contrasting it with their lives of righteousness and prayerful aspirations heavenward. Yet here are they all in my worshipping assembly. This night it shall be granted you to know their secret deeds: how hoary-bearded elders of the church have whispered wanton words to the young maids of their households; how many a woman, eager for widows’ weeds, has given her husband a drink at bedtime and let him sleep his last sleep in her bosom; how beardless youths have made haste to inherit their fathers’ wealth; and how fair damsels—blush not, sweet ones—have dug little graves in the garden, and bidden me, the sole guest to an infant’s funeral. By the sympathy of your human hearts for sin ye shall scent out all the places—whether in church, bedchamber, street, field, or forest—where crime has been committed, and shall exult to behold the whole earth one stain of guilt, one mighty blood spot. Far more than this. It shall be yours to penetrate, in every bosom, the deep mystery of sin, the fountain of all wicked arts, and which inexhaustibly supplies more evil impulses than human power—than my power at its utmost—can make manifest in deeds. And now, my children, look upon each other.”

They did so; and, by the blaze of the hell-kindled torches, the wretched man beheld his Faith, and the wife her husband, trembling before that unhallowed altar.

“Lo, there ye stand, my children,” said the figure, in a deep and solemn tone, almost sad with its despairing awfulness, as if his once angelic nature could yet mourn for our miserable race. “Depending upon one another’s hearts, ye had still hoped that virtue were not all a dream. Now are ye undeceived. Evil is the nature of mankind. Evil must be your only happiness. Welcome again, my children, to the communion of your race.”

“Welcome,” repeated the fiend worshippers, in one cry of despair and triumph.

And there they stood, the only pair, as it seemed, who were yet hesitating on the verge of wickedness in this dark world. A basin was hollowed, naturally, in the rock. Did it contain water, reddened by the lurid light? or was it blood? or, perchance, a liquid flame? Herein did the shape of evil dip his hand and prepare to lay the mark of baptism upon their foreheads, that they might be partakers of the mystery of sin, more conscious of the secret guilt of others, both in deed and thought, than they could now be of their own. The husband cast one look at his pale wife, and Faith at him. What polluted wretches would the next glance show them to each other, shuddering alike at what they disclosed and what they saw!

“Faith! Faith!” cried the husband, “look up to heaven, and resist the wicked one.”

Whether Faith obeyed he knew not. Hardly had he spoken when he found himself amid calm night and solitude, listening to a roar of the wind which died heavily away through the forest. He staggered against the rock, and felt it chill and damp; while a hanging twig, that had been all on fire, besprinkled his cheek with the coldest dew.

The next morning young Goodman Brown came slowly into the street of Salem village, staring around him like a bewildered man. The good old minister was taking a walk along the graveyard to get an appetite for breakfast and meditate his sermon, and bestowed a blessing, as he passed, on Goodman Brown. He shrank from the venerable saint as if to avoid an anathema. Old Deacon Gookin was at domestic worship, and the holy words of his prayer were heard through the open window. “What God doth the wizard pray to?” quoth Goodman Brown. Goody Cloyse, that excellent old Christian, stood in the early sunshine at her own lattice, catechizing a little girl who had brought her a pint of morning’s milk. Goodman Brown snatched away the child as from the grasp of the fiend himself. Turning the corner by the meeting-house, he spied the head of Faith, with the pink ribbons, gazing anxiously forth, and bursting into such joy at sight of him that she skipped along the street and almost kissed her husband before the whole village. But Goodman Brown looked sternly and sadly into her face, and passed on without a greeting.

Had Goodman Brown fallen asleep in the forest and only dreamed a wild dream of a witch-meeting?

Be it so if you will; but, alas! it was a dream of evil omen for young Goodman Brown. A stern, a sad, a darkly meditative, a distrustful, if not a desperate man did he become from the night of that fearful dream. On the Sabbath day,

when the congregation were singing a holy psalm, he could not listen because an anthem of sin rushed loudly upon his ear and drowned all the blessed strain. When the minister spoke from the pulpit with power and fervid eloquence, and, with his hand on the open Bible, of the sacred truths of our religion, and of saint-like lives and triumphant deaths, and of future bliss or misery unutterable, then did Goodman Brown turn pale, dreading lest the roof should thunder down upon the gray blasphemer and his hearers. Often, waking suddenly at midnight, he shrank from the bosom of Faith; and at morning or eventide, when the family knelt down at prayer, he scowled and muttered to himself, and gazed sternly at his wife, and turned away. And when he had lived long, and was borne to his grave a hoary corpse, followed by Faith, an aged woman, and children and grandchildren, a goodly procession, besides neighbors not a few, they carved no hopeful verse upon his tombstone, for his dying hour was gloom.

Langston Hughes

I, Too*

From The Collected Poems of Langston Hughes by Langston Hughes, copyright © 1994 by The Estate of Langston Hughes. Used by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, a division of Random House, Inc.

I, too, sing America.
I am the darker brother.
They send me to eat in the kitchen
When company comes,
But I laugh,
And eat well,
And grow strong.

Tomorrow,
I'll be at the table
When company comes.
Nobody'll dare
Say to me,
"Eat in the kitchen,"
Then.

Besides,
They'll see how beautiful I am
And be ashamed—
I, too, am America.

*This selection is featured in the model student essay in Chapter 10.

Langston Hughes

Theme for English B*

From *The Collected Poems of Langston Hughes* by Langston Hughes, copyright © 1994 by The Estate of Langston Hughes. Used by permission of Alfred A. Knopf, a division of Random House, Inc.

The instructor said,

*Go home, and write a page tonight.
And let that page come out of you—
Then, it will be true.*

5

I wonder if it's that simple?

I am twenty-two, colored, born in Winston-Salem.

I went to school there, then Durham, then here
to this college on the hill above Harlem.

I am the only colored student in my class.

10

The steps from the hill lead down into Harlem,
through a park, then I cross St. Nicholas,
Eighth Avenue, Seventh, and I come to the Y,
the Harlem Branch Y, where I take the elevator
up to my room, sit down, and write this page:

15

It's not easy to know what is true for you or me
at twenty-two, my age. But I guess I'm what
I feel and see and hear, Harlem, I hear you;
hear you, hear me—we two—you, me, talk on this page.
(I hear New York, too.) Me—who?

20

Well, I like to eat, sleep, drink, and be in love.

I like to work, read, learn, and understand life.

I like a pipe for a Christmas present,
or records—Bessie,* bop, or Bach.

I guess being colored doesn't make me *not* like
the same things other folks like who are other races.

25

So will my page be colored that I write?

Being me, it will not be white.

But it will be a part of you, instructor.

30

You are white—

yet a part of me, as I am a part of you.

That's American.

Sometimes perhaps you don't want to be a part of me.

*This selection is featured in the model student essay in Chapter 10.

*Bessie Smith: African-American blues singer (1898–1937).

Nor do I often want to be a part of you. 35
 But we are, that's true!
 As I learn from you,
 I guess you learn from me—
 although you're older—and white—
 and somewhat more free. 40

This is my page for English B.

Chapter 10

Zora Neale Hurston

Excerpt from *The Eatonville Anthology*

From I Love Myself When I Am Laughing ... and Then Again When I Am Looking Mean and Impressive by Zora Neale Hurston, edited by Alice Walker. New York: HarperCollins Publishers, 1979.

1

The Pleading Woman

Mrs. Tony Roberts is the pleading woman. She just loves to ask for things. Her husband gives her all he can rake and scrape, which is considerably more than most wives get for their housekeeping, but she goes from door to door begging for things.

She starts at the store. "Mist' Clarke," she sing-songs in a high keening voice, "gimme lil' piece uh meat tuh boil a pot uh greens wid. Lawd knows me an' mah chillen is so hongry! Hits uh shame! Tony don't fee-ee-eee-ed me!"

Mr. Clarke knows that she has money and that her larder is well stocked, for Tony Roberts is the best provider on his list. But her keening annoys him and he rises heavily. The pleader at his elbow shows all the joy of a starving man being seated at a feast.

"Thass right Mist' Clarke. De Lawd loveth de cheerful giver. Gimme jes' a lil' piece 'bout dis big (indicating the width of her hand) an' de Lawd'll bless yuh."

She follows this angel-on-earth to his meat tub and superintends the cutting, crying out in pain when he refuses to move the knife over just a teeny bit mo'.

Finally, meat in hand, she departs, remarking on the meanness of some people who give a piece of salt meat only two-fingers wide when they were plainly asked for a hand-wide piece. Clarke puts it down to Tony's account and resumes his reading.

With the slab of salt pork as a foundation, she visits various homes until she has collected all she wants for the day. At the Piersons, for instance: "Sister Pierson, plee-ee-ease gimme uh han'ful uh collard greens fuh me an' mah po' chillen! 'Deed, me an' mah chillen is so hongry. Tony doan' fee-ee-eed me!"

Mrs. Pierson picks a bunch of greens for her, but she springs away from them as if they were poison. “Lawd a mussy, Mis’ Pierson, you ain’t gonna gimme dat lil’ eye-full uh greens fuh me an’ mah chillen, is you? Don’t be so graspin’; Gawd won’t bless yuh. Gimme uh han’full mo’. Lawd, some folks is got everything, an’ theys jes’ as gripin’ an’ stingy!”

Mrs. Pierson raises the ante, and the pleading woman moves on to the next place, and on and on. The next day, it commences all over.

2

Turpentine Love

JIM MERCHANT is always in good humor—even with his wife. He says he fell in love with her at first sight. That was some years ago. She has had all her teeth pulled out, but they still get along splendidly.

He says the first time he called on her he found out that she was subject to fits. This didn’t cool his love, however. She had several in his presence.

One Sunday, while he was there, she had one, and her mother tried to give her a dose of turpentine to stop it. Accidentally, she spilled it in her eye and it cured her. She never had another fit, so they got married and have kept each other in good humor ever since.

3

BECKY MOORE has eleven children of assorted colors and sizes. She has never been married, but that is not her fault. She has never stopped any of the fathers of her children from proposing, so if she has no father for her children it’s not her fault. The men round about are entirely to blame.

The other mothers of the town are afraid that it is catching. They won’t let their children play with hers.

4

Tippy

SYKES JONES’ FAMILY all shoot craps. The most interesting member of the family—also fond of bones, but of another kind—is Tippy, the Jones’ dog.

He is so thin, that it amazes one that he lives at all. He sneaks into village kitchens if the housewives are careless about the doors and steals meats, even off the stoves. He also sucks eggs.

For these offenses he has been sentenced to death dozens of times, and the sentences executed upon him, only they didn’t work. He has been fed bluestone, strychnine, nux vomica, even an entire Peruna bottle beaten up. It didn’t fatten him, but it didn’t kill him. So Eatonville has resigned itself to the plague of Tippy, reflecting that it has erred in certain matters and is being chastened.

In spite of all the attempts upon his life, Tippy is still willing to be friendly with anyone who will let him.

5

The Way of a Man with a Train

OLD MAN ANDERSON lived seven or eight miles out in the country from Eatonville. Over by Lake Apopka. He raised feed-corn and cassava and went to market with it two or three times a year. He bought all of his victuals wholesale so he wouldn't have to come to town for several months more.

He was different from citybred folks. He had never seen a train. Everybody laughed at him for even the smallest child in Eatonville had either been to Maitland or Orlando and watched a train go by. On Sunday afternoons all of the young people of the village would go over to Maitland, a mile away, to see Number 35 whizz southward on its way to Tampa and wave at the passengers. So we looked down on him a little. Even we children felt superior in the presence of a person so lacking in wordly knowledge.

The grown-ups kept telling him he ought to go see a train. He always said he didn't have time to wait so long. Only two trains a day passed through Maitland. But patronage and ridicule finally had its effect and Old Man Anderson drove in one morning early. Number 78 went north to Jacksonville at 10:20. He drove his light wagon over in the woods beside the railroad below Maitland, and sat down to wait. He began to fear that his horse would get frightened and run away with the wagon. So he took him out and led him deeper into the grove and tied him securely. Then he returned to his wagon and waited some more. Then he remembered that some of the train-wise villagers had said the engine belched fire and smoke. He had better move his wagon out of danger. It might catch fire. He climbed down from the seat and placed himself between the shafts to draw it away. Just then 78 came thundering over the trestle spouting smoke, and suddenly began blowing for Maitland. Old Man Anderson became so frightened he ran away with the wagon through the woods and tore it up worse than the horse ever could have done. He doesn't know yet what a train looks like, and says he doesn't care.

6

Coon Taylor

COON TAYLOR never did any real stealing. Of course, if he saw a chicken or a watermelon he'd take it. The people used to get mad but they never could catch him. He took so many melons from Joe Clarke that he set up in the melon patch one night with his shotgun loaded with rock salt. He was going to fix Coon. But he was tired. It is hard work being a mayor, postmaster, storekeeper and everything. He dropped asleep sitting on a stump in the middle of the patch. So he didn't see Coon when he came. Coon didn't see him either, that is, not at first. He knew the stump was there, however. He had opened many of Clarke's juicy Florida Favorite on it. He selected his fruit, walked over to the stump and burst the melon on it. That is, he thought it was the stump until it fell over with a yell. Then he knew it was no stump and departed hastily from those parts. He had cleared the fence when Clarke came to, as it were. So the charge of rock-salt was wasted on the desert air.

During the sugar-cane season, he found he couldn't resist Clarke's soft green cane, but Clarke did not go to sleep this time. So after he had cut six of eight stalks by the moonlight, Clarke rose up out of the cane strippings with his shotgun and made Coon sit right down and chew up the last one of them on the spot. And the next day he made Coon leave his town for three months.

7

Village Fiction

JOE LINDSAY is said by Lum Boger to be the largest manufacturer of prevarications in Eatonville; Brazzle (late owner of the world's leanest and meanest mule) contends that his business is the largest in the state and his wife holds that he is the biggest liar in the world.

Exhibit A—He claims that while he was in Orlando one day he saw a doctor cut open a woman, remove everything—liver, lights and heart included—clean each of them separately; the doctor then washed out the empty woman, dried her out neatly with a towel and replaced the organs so expertly that she was up and about her work in a couple of weeks.

8

SEWELL is a man who lives all to himself. He moves a great deal. So often, that 'Lige Moseley says his chickens are so used to moving that every time he comes out into his backyard the chickens lie down and cross their legs, ready to be tied up again.

He is baldheaded; but he says he doesn't mind that, because he wants as little as possible between him and God.

9

MRS. CLARKE is Joe Clarke's wife. She is a soft-looking, middle-aged woman, whose bust and stomach are always holding a get-together.

She waits on the store sometimes and cries every time he yells at her which he does every time she makes a mistake, which is quite often. She calls her husband "Jody." They say he used to beat her in the store when he was a young man, but he is not so impatient now. He can wait until he goes home.

She shouts in Church every Sunday and shakes the hand of fellowship with everybody in the Church with her eyes closed, but somehow always misses her husband.

10

MRS. MCDUFFY goes to Church every Sunday and always shouts and tells her "determination." Her husband always sits in the back row and beats her soon as they get home. He says there's no sense in her shouting, as big a devil as she is. She just does it to slur him. Elijah Moseley asked her why she didn't stop shouting, seeing

she always got a beating about it. She says she can't "squinch the sperrit." Then Elijah asked Mr. McDuffy to stop beating her, seeing that she was going to shout anyway.

He answered that she just did it for spite and that his fist was just as hard as her head. He could last just as long as she. So the village let the matter rest.

11

Double-Shuffle

BACK IN THE GOOD OLD DAYS before the World War, things were very simple in Eatonville. People didn't fox-trot. When the town wanted to put on its Sunday clothes and wash behind the ears, it put on a "breakdown." The daring younger set would two-step and waltz, but the good church members and the elders stuck to the grand march. By rural canons dancing is wicked, but one is not held to have danced until the feet have been crossed. Feet don't get crossed when one grand marches.

At elaborate affairs the organ from the Methodist church was moved up to the hall and Lizzimore, the blind man presided. When informal gatherings were held, he merely played his guitar assisted by any volunteer with mouth organs or accordions.

Among white people the march is as mild as if it had been passed on by Volstead. But it still has a kick in Eatonville. Everybody happy, shining eyes, gleaming teeth. Feet dragged 'shhlap, shhlap! to beat out the time. No orchestra needed. Round and round! Back again, parse-me-la! shlap! shlap! Strut! Strut! Seaboard! Shlap! Shlap! Tiddy bumm! Mr. Clarke in the lead with Mrs. Moseley.

It's too much for some of the young folks. Double shuffling commences. Buck and wing. Lizzimore about to break his guitar. Accordion doing contortions. People fall back against the walls, and let the soloist have it, shouting as they clap the old, old double shuffle songs.

"Me an' mah honey got two mo' days
Two mo' days tuh do de buck"

Sweating bodies, laughing mouths, grotesque faces, feet drumming fiercely. Deacons clapping as hard as the rest.

"Great big nigger, black as tar
Trying tuh git tuh hebben on uh 'lectric car."

"Some love cabbage, some love kale
But I love a gal wid a short skirt tail."

"Long tall angel—steppin' down,
Long white robe an' starry crown."

"Ah would not marry uh black gal (bumm bumm!)
Tell yuh de reason why
Every time she comb her hair
She make de goo-goo eye.

Would not marry a yaller gal (bumm bumm!)
 Tell yuh de reason why
 Her neck so long an' stringy
 Ahm 'fraid she'd never die.

Would not marry uh preacher
 Tell yuh de reason why
 Every time he comes tuh town
 He makes de chicken fly."

When the buck dance was over, the boys would give the floor to the girls and they would parse-me-la with a slye eye out of the corner to see if anybody was looking who might "have them up in church" on conference night. Then there would be more dancing. Then Mr. Clarke would call for everybody's best attention and announce that *'freshments was served! Every gent'man would please take his lady by the arm and scorch her right up to de table fur a treat!*

Then the men would stick their arms out with a flourish and ask their ladies: "You lak chicken? Well, then, take a wing." And the ladies would take the proffered "wings" and parade up to the long table and be served. Of course most of them had brought baskets in which were heaps of jointed and fried chicken, two or three kinds of pies, cakes, potato pone and chicken purlo. The hall would separate into happy groups about the baskets until time for more dancing.

But the boys and girls got scattered about during the war, and now they dance the fox-trot by a brand new piano. They do waltz and two-step still, but no one now considers it good form to lock his chin over his partner's shoulder and stick out behind. One night just for fun and to humor the old folks, they danced, that is, they grand marched, but everyone picked up their feet. *Bah!!*

12

The Head of the Nail

DAISY TAYLOR was the town vamp. Not that she was pretty. But sirens were all but non-existent in the town. Perhaps she was forced to it by circumstances. She was quite dark, with little bushy patches of hair squatting over her head. These were held down by shingle-nails often. No one knows whether she did this for artistic effect or for lack of hairpins, but there they were shining in the little patches of hair when she got all dressed for the afternoon and came up to Clarke's store to see if there was any mail for her.

It was seldom that anyone wrote to Daisy, but she knew that the men of the town would be assembled there by five o'clock, and some one could usually be induced to buy her some soda-water or peanuts.

Daisy flirted with married men. There were only two single men in town. Lum Boger, who was engaged to the assistant school-teacher, and Hiram Lester, who had been off to school at Tuskegee and wouldn't look at a person like Daisy. In addition to other drawbacks, she was pigeon-toed and her petticoat was always showing so perhaps he was justified. There was nothing else to do except flirt with married men.

This went on for a long time. First one wife and then another complained of her, or drove her from the preserves by threat.

But the affair with Crooms was the most prolonged and serious. He was even known to have bought her a pair of shoes.

Mrs. Laura Crooms was a meek little woman who took all of her troubles crying, and talked a great deal of leaving things in the hands of God.

The affair came to a head one night in orange picking time. Crooms was over at Oneido picking oranges. Many fruit pickers move from one town to the other during the season.

The *town* was collected at the store-postoffice as is customary on Saturday nights. The *town* has had its bath and with its week's pay in pocket fares forth to be merry. The men tell stories and treat the ladies to soda-water, peanuts and peppermint candy.

Daisy was trying to get treats, but the porch was cold to her that night.

"Ah don't keer if you don't treat me. What's a dirty lil nickel?" She flung this at Walter Thomas. "The everloving Mister Crooms will gimme anything atall Ah wants."

"You better shet up yo' mouf talking 'bout Albert Crooms. Heah his wife comes right now."

Daisy went akimbo. "Who? Me! Ah don't keer whut Laura Crooms think. If she ain't a heavy hip-ted Mama enough to keep him, she don't need to come crying to me."

She stood making goo-goo eyes as Mrs. Crooms walked upon the porch. Daisy laughed loud, made several references to Albert Crooms, and when she saw the mail-bag come in from Maitland she said, "Ah better go in an' see if Ah ain't got a letter from Oneido."

The more Daisy played the game of getting Mrs. Crooms' goat, the better she liked it. She ran in and out of the store laughing until she could scarcely stand. Some of the people present began to talk to Mrs. Crooms—to egg her on to halt Daisy's boasting, but she was for leaving it all in the hands of God. Walter Thomas kept on after Mrs. Crooms until she stiffened and resolved to fight. Daisy was inside when she came to this resolve and never dreamed anything of the kind could happen. She had gotten hold of an envelope and came laughing and shouting, "Oh, Ah can't stand to see Oneido lose!"

There was a box of ax-handles on display on the porch, propped up against the door jamb. As Daisy stepped upon the porch, Mrs. Crooms leaned the heavy end of one of those handles heavily upon her head. She staggered from the porch to the ground and the timid Laura, fearful of a counter-attack, struck again and Daisy toppled into the town ditch. There was not enough water in there to do more than muss her up. Every time she tried to rise, down would come that ax-handle again. Laura was fighting a scared fight. With Daisy thoroughly licked, she retired to the store porch and left her fallen enemy in the ditch. But Elijah Moseley, who was some distance down the street when the trouble began arrived as the victor was withdrawing. He rushed up and picked Daisy out of the mud and began feeling her head.

"Is she hurt much?" Joe Clarke asked from the doorway.

"I don't know," Elijah answered, "I was just looking to see if Laura had been lucky enough to hit one of those nails on the head and drive it in."

Before a week was up, Daisy moved to Orlando. There in a wider sphere, perhaps, her talents as a vamp were appreciated.

13

Pants and Cal'line

SISTER CAL'LINE POTTS was a silent woman. Did all of her laughing down inside, but did the thing that kept the town in an uproar of laughter. It was the general opinion of the village that Cal'line would do anything she had a mind to. And she had a mind to do several things.

Mitchell Potts, her husband, had a weakness for women. No one ever believed that she was jealous. She did things to the women, surely. But most any townsman would have said that she did them because she liked the novel situation and the queer things she could bring out of it.

Once he took up with Delphine—called Mis' Pheeny by the town. She lived on the outskirts on the edge of the piney woods. The town winked and talked. People don't make secrets of such things in villages. Cal'line went about her business with her thin black lips pursed tight as ever, and her shiny black eyes unchanged.

"Dat devil of a Cal'line's got somethin' up her sleeve!" The town smiled in anticipation.

"Delphine is too big a cigar for her to smoke. She ain't crazy," said some as the weeks went on and nothing happened. Even Pheeny herself would give an extra flirt to her over-starched petticoats as she rustled into church past her of Sundays.

Mitch Potts said furthermore, that he was tired of Cal'line's foolishness. She had to stay where he put her. His African soup-bone (arm) was too strong to let a woman run over him. 'Nough was 'nough. And he did some fancy cussing, and he was the fanciest cusser in the county.

So the town waited and the longer it waited, the odds changed slowly from the wife to the husband.

One Saturday, Mitch knocked off work at two o'clock and went over to Maitland. He came back with a rectangular box under his arm and kept straight on out to the barn to put it away. He ducked around the corner of the house quickly, but even so, his wife glimpsed the package. Very much like a shoe-box. So!

He put on the kettle and took a bath. She stood in her bare feet at the ironing board and kept on ironing. He dressed. It was about five o'clock but still very light. He fiddled around outside. She kept on with her ironing. As soon as the sun got red, he sauntered out to the barn, got the parcel and walked away down the road, past the store and into the piney woods. As soon as he left the house, Cal'line slipped on her shoes without taking time to don stockings, put on one of her husband's old Stetsons, worn and floppy, slung the axe over her shoulder and followed in his wake. He was hailed cheerily as he passed

the sitters on the store porch and answered smiling sheepishly and passed on. Two minutes later passed his wife, silently, unsmilingly, and set the porch to giggling and betting.

An hour passed perhaps. It was dark. Clarke had long ago lighted the swinging kerosene lamp inside.

14

ONCE 'WAY BACK YONDER before the stars fell all the animals used to talk just like people. In them days dogs and rabbits was the best of friends—even tho' both of them was stuck on the same gal—which was Miss Nancy Coon. She had the sweetest smile and the prettiest striped and bushy tail to be found anywhere.

They both run their legs nigh off trying to win her for themselves—fetching nice ripe persimmons and such. But she never give one or the other no satisfaction.

Finally one night Mr. Dog popped the question right out. “Miss Coon,” he says, “Ma’am, also Ma’am which would you ruther be—a lark flyin’ or a dove a settin’?”

Course Miss Nancy she blushed and laughed a little and hid her face behind her bushy tail for a spell. Then she said sorter shy like, “I does love yo’ sweet voice, brother dawg—but—I ain’t jes’ exactly set my mind yit.”

Her and Mr. Dog set on a spell, when up comes hopping Mr. Rabbit wid his tail fresh washed and his whiskers shining. He got right down to business and asked Miss Coon to marry him, too.

“Oh, Miss Nancy,” he says, “Ma’am, also Ma’am, if you’d see me settin’ straddle of a mud-cat leadin’ a minnow, what would you think? Ma’am also Ma’am?” Which is a out and out proposal as everybody knows.

“Youse awful nice, Brother Rabbit and a beautiful dancer, but you cannot sing like Brother Dog. Both you uns come back next week to gimme time for to decide.”

They both left arm-in-arm. Finally Mr. Rabbit says to Mr. Dog. “Taint no use in me going back—she ain’t gwinter have me. So I mought as well give up. She loves singing, and I ain’t got nothing but a squeak.”

“Oh, don’t talk that a way,” says Mr. Dog, tho’ he is glad Mr. Rabbit can’t sing none.

“Thass all right, Brer Dog. But if I had a sweet voice like you got, I’d have it worked on and make it sweeter.”

“How! How! How!” Mr. Dog cried, jumping up and down.

“Lemme fix it for you, like I do for Sister Lark and Sister Mocking-bird.”

“When? Where?” asked Mr. Dog, all excited. He was figuring that if he could sing just a little better Miss Coon would be bound to have him.

“Just you meet me t’morrer in de huckleberry patch,” says the rabbit and off they both goes to bed.

The dog is there on time next day and after a while the rabbit comes loping up.

“Mawnin’, Brer Dawg,” he says kinder chippy like. “Ready to git yo’ voice sweetened?”

“Sholy, sholy, Brer Rabbit. Let’s we all hurry about it. I wants tuh serenade Miss Nancy from the piney woods tuh night.”

“Well, den, open yo’ mouf and poke out yo’ tongue,” says the rabbit.

No sooner did Mr. Dog poke out his tongue than Mr. Rabbit split it with a knife and ran for all he was worth to a hollow stump and hid hisself.

The dog has been mad at the rabbit ever since.

Anybody who don’t believe it happened, just look at the dog’s tongue and he can see for himself where the rabbit slit it right up the middle.

Stepped on a tin, mah story ends.

Chapter 3

James Joyce

Araby*

From Dubliners, by James Joyce, copyright 1916 by B. W. Heusch. Definitive text copyright © 1967 by the Estate of James Joyce. Used by permission of Viking Penguin, a division of Penguin Putnam Inc.

North Richmond Street, being blind, was a quiet street except at the hour when the Christian Brothers’ School set the boys free. An uninhabited house of two storeys stood at the blind end, detached from its neighbours in a square ground. The other houses of the street, conscious of decent lives within them, gazed at one another with brown imperturbable faces.

The former tenant of our house, a priest, had died in the back drawingroom. Air, musty from having been long enclosed, hung in all the rooms and the waste room behind the kitchen was littered with old useless papers. Among these I found a few papercovered books, the pages of which were curled and damp: *The Abbot* by Walter Scott, *The Devout Communicant* and *The Memoirs of Vidocq*. I liked the last best because its leaves were yellow. The wild garden behind the house contained a central apple tree and a few straggling bushes under one of which I found the late tenant’s rusty bicycle pump. He had been a very charitable priest; in his will he had left all his money to institutions and the furniture of his house to his sister.

When the short days of winter came dusk fell before we had well eaten our dinners. When we met in the street the houses had grown sombre. The space of sky above us was the colour of everchanging violet and towards it the lamps of the street lifted their feeble lanterns. The cold air stung us and we played till our bodies glowed. Our shouts echoed in the silent street. The career of our play brought us through the dark muddy lanes behind the houses where we ran the gantlet of the rough tribes from the cottages, to the back doors of the dark dripping gardens where odours arose from the ashpits, to the dark odorous stables where a coachman smoothed and combed the horse or shook music from the

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 7.

buckled harness. When we returned to the street light from the kitchen windows had filled the areas. If my uncle was seen turning the corner we hid in the shadow until we had seen him safely housed. Or if Mangan's sister came out on the doorstep to call her brother in to his tea we watched her from our shadow peer up and down the street. We waited to see whether she would remain or go in and if she remained we left our shadow and walked up to Mangan's steps resignedly. She was waiting for us, her figure defined by the light from the half-opened door. Her brother always teased her before he obeyed and I stood by the railings looking at her. Her dress swung as she moved her body and the soft rope of her hair tossed from side to side.

Every morning I lay on the floor in the front parlour watching her door. The blind was pulled down to within an inch of the sash so that I could not be seen. When she came out on the doorstep my heart leaped. I ran to the hall, seized my books and followed her. I kept her brown figure always in my eye and when we came near the point at which our ways diverged I quickened my pace and passed her. This happened morning after morning. I had never spoken to her except for a few casual words and yet her name was like a summons to all my foolish blood.

Her image accompanied me even in places the most hostile to romance. On Saturday evenings when my aunt went marketing I had to go to carry some of the parcels. We walked through the flaring streets, jostled by drunken men and bargaining women, amid the curses of labourers, the shrill litanies of shop boys who stood on guard by the barrels of pigs' cheeks, the nasal chanting of street singers who sang a *come-all-you* about O'Donovan Rossa or a ballad about the troubles in our native land. These noises converged in a single sensation of life for me: I imagined that I bore my chalice safely through a throng of foes. Her name sprang to my lips at moments in strange prayers and praises which I myself did not understand. My eyes were often full of tears (I could not tell why) and at times a flood from my heart seemed to pour itself out into my bosom. I thought little of the future. I did not know whether I would ever speak to her or not or, if I spoke to her, how I could tell her of my confused adoration. But my body was like a harp and her words and gestures were like fingers running upon the wires.

One evening I went into the back drawingroom in which the priest had died. It was a dark rainy evening and there was no sound in the house. Through one of the broken panes I heard the rain impinge upon the earth, the fine incessant needles of water playing in the sodden beds. Some distant lamp or lighted window gleamed below me. I was thankful that I could see so little. All my senses seemed to desire to veil themselves and, feeling that I was about to slip from them, I pressed the palms of my hands together until they trembled, murmuring: *O love! O love!* many times.

At last she spoke to me. When she addressed the first words to me I was so confused that I did not know what to answer. She asked me was I going to *Araby*. I forget whether I answered yes or no. It would be a splendid bazaar, she said; she would love to go.

—And why can't you? I asked.

While she spoke she turned a silver bracelet round and round her wrist. She could not go, she said, because there would be a retreat that week in her convent. Her brother and two other boys were fighting for their caps and I was alone at the railings. She held one of the spikes, bowing her head towards me. The light from the lamp opposite our door caught the white curve of her neck, lit up the hair that rested there and, falling, lit up the hand upon the railing. It fell over one side of her dress and caught the white border of a petticoat, just visible as she stood at ease.

—It's well for you, she said.

—If I go, I said, I will bring you something.

What innumerable follies laid waste my waking and sleeping thoughts after that evening! I wished to annihilate the tedious intervening days. I chafed against the work of school. At night in my bedroom and by day in the classroom her image came between me and the page I strove to read. The syllables of the word *Araby* were called to me through the silence in which my soul luxuriated and cast an eastern enchantment over me. I asked for leave to go to the bazaar on Saturday night. My aunt was surprised and hoped it was not some freemason affair. I answered few questions in class. I watched my master's face pass from amiability to sternness; he hoped I was not beginning to idle. I could not call my wandering thoughts together. I had hardly any patience with the serious work of life which, now that it stood between me and my desire, seemed to me child's play, ugly monotonous child's play.

On Saturday morning I reminded my uncle that I wished to go to the bazaar in the evening. He was fussing at the hallstand, looking for the hatbrush, and answered me curtly:

—Yes, boy, I know.

As he was in the hall I could not go into the front parlour and lie at the window. I left the house in bad humour and walked slowly towards the school. The air was pitilessly raw and already my heart misgave me.

When I came home to dinner my uncle had not yet been home. Still it was early. I sat staring at the clock for some time and when its ticking began to irritate me I left the room. I mounted the staircase and gained the upper part of the house. The high cold empty gloomy rooms liberated me and I went from room to room singing. From the front window I saw my companions playing below in the street. Their cries reached me weakened and indistinct and, leaning my forehead against the cool glass, I looked over at the dark house where she lived. I may have stood there for an hour seeing nothing but the brownclad figure cast by my imagination, touched discreetly by the lamplight at the curved neck, at the hand upon the railings and at the border below the dress.

When I came downstairs again I found Mrs Mercer sitting at the fire. She was an old garrulous woman, a pawnbroker's widow who collected used stamps for some pious purpose. I had to endure the gossip of the teatable. The meal was prolonged beyond an hour and still my uncle did not come. Mrs Mercer stood up to go: she was sorry she couldn't wait any longer but it was after eight o'clock

and she did not like to be out late as the night air was bad for her. When she had gone I began to walk up and down the room, clenching my fists. My aunt said:—I'm afraid you may put off your bazaar for this night of Our Lord.

At nine o'clock I heard my uncle's latchkey in the halldoor. I heard him talking to himself and heard the hallstand rocking when it had received the weight of his overcoat. I could interpret these signs. When he was midway through his dinner I asked him to give me the money to go to the bazaar. He had forgotten.

—The people are in bed and after their first sleep now, he said.

I did not smile. My aunt said to him energetically:

—Can't you give him the money and let him go? You've kept him late enough as it is.

My uncle said he was very sorry he had forgotten. He said he believed in the old saying: *All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy*. He asked me where I was going and when I had told him a second time he asked me did I know *The Arab's Farewell to His Steed*. When I left the kitchen he was about to recite the opening lines of the piece to my aunt.

I held a florin tightly in my hand as I strode down Buckingham Street towards the station. The sight of the streets thronged with buyers and glaring with gas recalled to me the purpose of my journey. I took my seat in a third class carriage of a deserted train. After an intolerable delay the train moved out of the station slowly. It crept onward among ruinous houses and over the twinkling river. At Westland Row Station a crowd of people pressed at the carriage doors; but the porters moved them back, saying that it was a special train for the bazaar. I remained alone in the bare carriage. In a few minutes the train drew up beside an improvised wooden platform. I passed out on to the road and saw by the lighted dial of a clock that it was ten minutes to ten. In front of me was a large building which displayed the magical name.

I could not find any sixpenny entrance and, fearing that the bazaar would be closed, I passed in quickly through a turnstile, handing a shilling to a weary-looking man. I found myself in a big hall girdled at half its height by a gallery. Nearly all the stalls were closed and the greater part of the hall was in darkness. I recognised a silence like that which pervades a church after a service. I walked into the centre of the bazaar timidly. A few people were gathered about the stalls which were still open. Before a curtain over which the words *Café Chantant* were written in coloured lamps two men were counting money on a salver. I listened to the fall of the coins.

Remembering with difficulty why I had come I went over to one of the stalls and examined porcelain vases and flowered teaset. At the door of the stall a young lady was talking and laughing with two young gentlemen. I remarked their English accents and listened vaguely to their conversation.

—O, I never said such a thing!

—O, but you did!
 —O, but I didn't!
 —Didn't she say that? —She did. I heard her.
 —O, there's a ... fib!

Observing me the young lady came over and asked me did I wish to buy anything. The tone of her voice was not encouraging: she seemed to have spoken to me out of a sense of duty. I looked humbly at the great jars that stood like eastern guards at either side of the dark entrance to her stall and murmured:

—No, thank you.

The young lady changed the position of one of the vases and went back to the two young men. They began to talk of the same subject. Once or twice the young lady glanced at me over her shoulder.

I lingered before her stall, though I knew my stay was useless, to make my interest in her wares seem the more real. Then I turned away slowly and walked down the middle of the bazaar. I allowed the two pennies to fall against the sixpence in my pocket. I heard a voice call from one end of the gallery that the light was out. The upper part of the hall was now completely dark.

Gazing up into the darkness I saw myself as a creature driven and derided by vanity: and my eyes burned with anguish and anger.

John Keats

To Autumn*

1

SEASON of mists and mellow fruitfulness,
 Close bosom-friend of the maturing sun;
 Conspiring with him how to load and bless
 With fruit the vines that round the thatch-eaves run;
 To bend with apples the mossed cottage-trees,
 And fill all fruit with ripeness to the core;
 To swell the gourd, and plump the hazel shells
 With a sweet kernel; to set budding more,
 And still more, later flowers for the bees,
 Until they think warm days will never cease,
 For Summer has o'er-brimmed their clammy cells.

2

Who hath not seen thee oft amid thy store?
 Sometimes whoever seeks abroad may find

*This selection is featured in the model student essay in Chapter 11.

Thee sitting careless on a granary floor,
 Thy hair soft-lifted by the winnowing wind;
 Or on a half-reaped furrow sound asleep,
 Drowsed with the fume of poppies, while thy hook
 Spares the next swath and all its twinèd flowers;
 And sometimes like a gleaner thou dost keep
 Steady thy laden head across a brook;
 Or by a cider-press, with patient look,
 Thou watchest the last oozings hours by hours.

3

Where are the songs of spring? Ay, where are they?
 Think not of them, thou hast thy music too,—
 While barred clouds bloom the soft-dying day,
 And touch the stubble-plains with rosy hue;
 Then in a wailful choir the small gnats mourn
 Among the river shallows, borne aloft
 Or sinking as the light wind lives or dies;
 And full-grown lambs loud bleat from hilly bourn;
 Hedge-crickets sing; and now with treble soft
 The redbreast whistles from a garden-croft;
 And gathering swallows twitter in the skies.

Chapter 5

Guy De Maupassant

The Diamond Necklace*

From Selected Tales of Guy de Maupassant, ed. Faye Commins (New York: Random House, 1950), pp. 137–44.

She was one of those pretty, charming young ladies, born, as if through an error of destiny, into a family of clerks. She had no dowry, no hopes, no means of becoming known, appreciated, loved, and married by a man either rich or distinguished; and she allowed herself to marry a petty clerk in the office of the Board of Education.

She was simple, not being able to adorn herself; but she was unhappy, as one out of her class; for women belong to no caste, no race; their grace, their beauty, and their charm serving them in the place of birth and family. Their inborn

*This selection is also featured in the model student essay in Chapter 8.

finesse, their instinctive elegance, their suppleness of wit are their only aristocracy, making some daughters of the people the equal of great ladies.

She suffered incessantly, feeling herself born for all delicacies and luxuries. She suffered from the poverty of her apartment, the shabby walls, the worn chairs, and the faded stuffs. All these things, which another woman of her station would not have noticed, tortured and angered her. The sight of the little Breton, who made this humble home, awoke in her sad regrets and desperate dreams. She thought of quiet antechambers, with their Oriental hangings, lighted by high, bronze torches, and of the two great footmen in short trousers who sleep in the large armchairs, made sleepy by the heavy air from the heating apparatus. She thought of large drawing-rooms, hung in old silks, of graceful pieces of furniture carrying bric-à-brac of inestimable value, and of the little perfumed coquettish apartments, made for five o'clock chats with most intimate friends, men known and sought after, whose attention all women envied and desired.

When she seated herself for dinner, before the round table where the tablecloth had been used three days, opposite her husband who uncovered the tureen with a delighted air, saying: "Oh! the good potpie! I know nothing better than that—" she would think of the elegant dinners, of the shining silver, of the tapestries peopling the walls with ancient personages and rare birds in the midst of fairy forests; she thought of the exquisite food served on marvelous dishes, of the whispered gallantries, listened to with the smile of the sphinx, while eating the rose-colored flesh of the trout or a chicken's wing.

She had neither frocks nor jewels, nothing. And she loved only those things. She felt that she was made for them. She had such a desire to please, to be sought after, to be clever, and courted.

She had a rich friend, a schoolmate at the convent, whom she did not like to visit, she suffered so much when she returned. And she wept for whole days from chagrin, from regret, from despair, and disappointment.

One evening her husband returned elated, bearing in his hand a large envelope. "Here," said he, "here is something for you." She quickly tore open the wrapper and drew out a printed card on which were inscribed these words:

"The Minister of Public Instruction and Madame George Ramponneau ask the honor of Mr. and Mrs. Loisel's company Monday evening, January 18, at the Minister's residence."

Instead of being delighted, as her husband had hoped, she threw the invitation spitefully upon the table murmuring:

"What do you suppose I want with that?"

"But, my dearie, I thought it would make you happy. You never go out, and this is an occasion, and a fine one! I had a great deal of trouble to get it. Everybody wishes one, and it is very select; not many are given to employees. You will see the whole official world there."

She looked at him with an irritated eye and declared impatiently:

"What do you suppose I have to wear to such a thing as that?"

He had not thought of that; he stammered:

“Why, the dress you wear when we go to the theater. It seems very pretty to me—” He was silent, stupefied, in dismay, at the sight of his wife weeping. Two great tears fell slowly from the corners of his eyes toward the corners of his mouth; he stammered:

“What is the matter? What is the matter?”

By a violent effort, she had controlled her vexation and responded in a calm voice, wiping her moist cheeks:

“Nothing. Only I have no dress and consequently I cannot go to this affair. Give your card to some colleague whose wife is better fitted out than I.”

He was grieved, but answered:

“Let us see, Matilda. How much would a suitable costume cost, something that would serve for other occasions, something very simple?”

She reflected for some seconds, making estimates and thinking of a sum that she could ask for without bringing with it an immediate refusal and a frightened exclamation from the economical clerk.

Finally she said, in a hesitating voice:

“I cannot tell exactly, but it seems to me that four hundred francs ought to cover it.”

He turned a little pale, for he had saved just this sum to buy a gun that he might be able to join some hunting parties the next summer, on the plains at Nanterre, with some friends who went to shoot larks up there on Sunday. Nevertheless, he answered:

“Very well. I will give you four hundred francs. But try to have a pretty dress.”

The day of the ball approached and Mme. Loisel seemed sad, disturbed, anxious. Nevertheless, her dress was nearly ready. Her husband said to her one evening: “What is the matter with you? You have acted strangely for two or three days.”

And she responded: “I am vexed not to have a jewel, not one stone, nothing to adorn myself with. I shall have such a poverty-laden look. I would prefer not to go to this party.”

He replied: “You can wear some natural flowers. At this season they look very *chic*. For ten francs you can have two or three magnificent roses.”

She was not convinced. “No,” she replied, “there is nothing more humiliating than to have a shabby air in the midst of rich women.”

Then her husband cried out: “How stupid we are! Go and find your friend Mrs. Forestier and ask her to lend you her jewels. You are well enough acquainted with her to do this.”

She uttered a cry of joy: “It is true!” she said. “I had not thought of that.”

The next day she took herself to her friend’s house and related her story of distress. Mrs. Forestier went to her closet with the glass doors, took out a large jewel-case, brought it, opened it, and said: “Choose, my dear.”

She saw at first some bracelets, then a collar of pearls, then a Venetian cross of gold and jewels and of admirable workmanship. She tried the jewels before the glass, hesitated, but could neither decide to take them nor leave them. Then she asked:

“Have you nothing more?”

“Why, yes. Look for yourself. I do not know what will please you.”

Suddenly she discovered, in a black satin box, a superb necklace of diamonds, and her heart beat fast with an immoderate desire. Her hands trembled as she took them up. She placed them about her throat against her dress, and remained in ecstasy before them. Then she asked, in a hesitating voice, full of anxiety:

“Could you lend me this? Only this?”

“Why, yes, certainly.”

She fell upon the neck of her friend, embraced her with passion, then went away with her treasure.

The day of the ball arrived. Mme. Loisel was a great success. She was the prettiest of all, elegant, gracious, smiling, and full of joy. All the men noticed her, asked her name, and wanted to be presented. All the members of the Cabinet wished to waltz with her. The Minister of Education paid her some attention.

She danced with enthusiasm, with passion, intoxicated with pleasure, thinking of nothing, in the triumph of her beauty, in the glory of her success, in a kind of cloud of happiness that came of all this homage, and all this admiration, of all these awakened desires, and this victory so complete and sweet to the heart of woman.

She went home toward four o'clock in the morning. Her husband had been half asleep in one of the little salons since midnight, with three other gentlemen whose wives were enjoying themselves very much.

He threw around her shoulders the wraps they had carried for the coming home, modest garments of everyday wear, whose poverty clashed with the elegance of the ball costume. She felt this and wished to hurry away in order not to be noticed by the other women who were wrapping themselves in rich furs.

Loisel retained her: “Wait,” said he. “You will catch cold out there. I am going to call a cab.”

But she would not listen and descended the steps rapidly. When they were in the street, they found no carriage; and they began to seek one, hailing the coachmen whom they saw at a distance.

They walked along toward the Seine, hopeless and shivering. Finally they found on the dock one of those old, nocturnal *coupés* that one sees in Paris after nightfall, as if they were ashamed of their misery by day.

It took them as far as their door in Martyr Street, and they went wearily up to their apartment. It was all over for her. And on his part, he remembered that he would have to be at the office by ten o'clock.

She removed the wraps from her shoulders before the glass, for a final view of herself in her glory. Suddenly she uttered a cry. Her necklace was not around her neck.

Her husband, already half undressed, asked: “What is the matter?”

She turned toward him excitedly:

“I have—I have—I no longer have Mrs. Forestier’s necklace.”

He arose in dismay: “What! How is that? It is not possible.”

And they looked in the folds of the dress, in the folds of the mantle, in the pockets, everywhere. They could not find it.

He asked: "You are sure you still had it when we left the house?"

"Yes, I felt it in the vestibule as we came out."

"But if you had lost it in the street, we should have heard it fall. It must be in the cab."

"Yes. It is probable. Did you take the number?"

"No. And you, did you notice what it was?"

"No."

They looked at each other utterly cast down. Finally, Loisel dressed himself again.

"I am going," said he, "over the track where we went on foot, to see if I can find it."

And he went. She remained in her evening gown, not having the strength to go to bed, stretched upon a chair, without ambition or thoughts.

Toward seven o'clock her husband returned. He had found nothing.

He went to the police and to the cab offices, and put an advertisement in the newspapers, offering a reward; he did everything that afforded them a suspicion of hope.

She waited all day in a state of bewilderment before this frightful disaster. Loisel returned at evening with his face harrowed and pale; he had discovered nothing.

"It will be necessary," said he, "to write to your friend that you have broken the clasp of the necklace and that you will have it repaired. That will give us time to turn around."

She wrote as he dictated.

At the end of a week, they had lost all hope. And Loisel, older by five years, declared:

"We must take measures to replace this jewel."

The next day they took the box which had enclosed it, to the jeweler whose name was on the inside. He consulted his books.

"It is not I, Madame," said he, "who sold this necklace; I only furnished the casket."

Then they went from jeweler to jeweler seeking a necklace like the other one, consulting their memories, and ill, both of them, with chagrin and anxiety.

In a shop of the Palais-Royal, they found a chaplet of diamonds which seemed to them exactly like the one they had lost. It was valued at forty thousand francs. They could get it for thirty-six thousand.

They begged the jeweler not to sell it for three days. And they made an arrangement by which they might return it for thirty-four thousand francs if they found the other one before the end of February.

Loisel possessed eighteen thousand francs which his father had left him. He borrowed the rest.

He borrowed it, asking for a thousand francs of one, five hundred of another, five louis of this one, and three louis of that one. He gave notes, made ruinous promises, took money of usurers and the whole race of lenders. He compromised his whole existence, in fact, risked his signature, without even knowing whether he could make it good or not, and, harassed by anxiety for

the future, by the black misery which surrounded him, and by the prospect of all physical privations and moral torture, he went to get the new necklace, depositing on the merchant's counter thirty-six thousand francs.

When Mrs. Loisel took back the jewels to Mrs. Forestier, the latter said to her in a frigid tone:

"You should have returned them to me sooner, for I might have needed them." She did open the jewel-box as her friend feared she would. If she should perceive the substitution, what would she think? What should she say? Would she take her for a robber?

Mrs. Loisel now knew the horrible life of necessity. She did her part, however, completely, heroically. It was necessary to pay this frightful debt. She would pay it. They sent away the maid; they changed their lodgings; they rented some rooms under a mansard roof.

She learned the heavy cares of a household, the odious work of a kitchen. She washed the dishes, using her rosy nails upon the greasy pots and the bottoms of the stewpans. She washed the soiled linen, the chemises and dishcloths, which she hung on the line to dry; she took down the refuse to the street each morning and brought up the water, stopping at each landing to breathe. And, clothed like a woman of the people, she went to the grocer's, the butcher's, and the fruiterer's, with her basket on her arm, shopping, haggling, defending to the last sou her miserable money.

Every month it was necessary to renew some notes, thus obtaining time, and to pay others.

The husband worked evenings, putting the books of some merchants in order, and nights he often did copying at five sous a page.

And this life lasted for ten years.

At the end of ten years, they had restored all, all, with interest of the usurer, and accumulated interest besides.

Mrs. Loisel seemed old now. She had become a strong, hard woman, the crude woman of the poor household. Her hair badly dressed, her skirts awry, her hands red, she spoke in a loud tone, and washed the floors, using large pails of water. But sometimes, when her husband was at the office, she would seat herself before the window and think of that evening party of former times, of that ball where she was so beautiful and so flattered.

How would it have been if she had not lost that necklace? Who knows? Who knows? How singular is life, and how full of changes! How small a thing will ruin or save one!

One Sunday, as she was taking a walk in the Champs-Élysées to rid herself of the cares of the week, she suddenly perceived a woman walking with a child. It was Mrs. Forestier, still young, still pretty, still attractive. Mrs. Loisel was affected. Should she speak to her? Yes, certainly. And now that she had paid, she would tell her all. Why not?

She approached her. "Good morning, Jeanne."

Her friend did not recognize her and was astonished to be so familiarly addressed by this common personage. She stammered:

"But, Madame—I do not know—You must be mistaken—"

“No, I am Matilda Loisel.”

Her friend uttered a cry of astonishment: “Oh! my poor Matilda! How you have changed—”

“Yes, I have had some hard days since I saw you; and some miserable ones—and all because of you—”

“Because of me? How is that?”

“You recall the diamond necklace that you loaned me to wear to the Commissioner’s ball?”

“Yes, very well.”

“Well, I lost it.”

“How is that, since you returned it to me?”

“I returned another to you exactly like it. And it has taken us ten years to pay for it. You can understand that it was not easy for us who have nothing. But it is finished and I am decently content.”

Madame Forestier stopped short. She said:

“You say that you bought a diamond necklace to replace mine?”

“Yes. You did not perceive it then? They were just alike.”

And she smiled with a proud and simple joy. Madame Forestier was touched and took both her hands as she replied:

“Oh! my poor Matilda! Mine were false. They were not worth over five hundred francs!”

Chapter 7

Edgar Allan Poe

The Masque of the Red Death

From The Gold Bug and Other Tales and Poems (New York: Macmillan, 1945), pp. 164–71.

The “Red Death” had long devastated the country. No pestilence had ever been so fatal, or so hideous. Blood was its Avatar and its seal—the redness and the horror of blood. There were sharp pains, and sudden dizziness, and then profuse bleeding at the pores, with dissolution. The scarlet stains upon the body and especially upon the face of the victim, were the pest ban which shut him out from the aid and from the sympathy of his fellow-men. And the whole seizure, progress and termination of the disease, were the incidents of half an hour.

But the Prince Prospero was happy and dauntless and sagacious. When his dominions were half depopulated, he summoned to his presence a thousand hale and light-hearted friends from among the knights and dames of his court, and with these retired to the deep seclusion of one of his castellated abbeys. This was an extensive and magnificent structure, the creation of the prince’s own eccentric yet august taste. A strong and lofty wall girdled it in. This wall had gates of iron. The courtiers, having entered, brought furnaces and massy hammers and welded the bolts. They resolved to leave means neither of ingress or egress to the

sudden impulses of despair or of frenzy from within. The abbey was amply provisioned. With such precautions the courtiers might bid defiance to contagion. The external world could take care of itself. In the meantime it was folly to grieve, or to think. The prince had provided all the appliances of pleasures. There were buffoons, there were improvisatori, there were ballet-dancers, there were musicians, there was Beauty, there was wine. All these and security were within. Without was the “Red Death.”

It was toward the close of the fifth or sixth month of his seclusion, and while the pestilence raged most furiously abroad, that the Prince Prospero entertained his thousand friends at a masked ball of the most unusual magnificence.

It was a voluptuous scene, that masquerade. But first let me tell of the rooms in which it was held. There were seven—an imperial suite. In many palaces, however, such suites form a long and straight vista, while the folding doors slide back nearly to the walls on either hand, so that the view of the whole extent is scarcely impeded. Here the case was very different; as might have been expected from the duke’s love of the *bizarre*. The apartments were so irregularly disposed that the vision embraced but little more than one at a time. There was a sharp turn at every twenty or thirty yards, and at each turn a novel effect. To the right and left, in the middle of each wall, a tall and narrow Gothic window looked out upon a closed corridor which pursued the windings of the suite. These windows were of stained glass whose color varied in accordance with the prevailing hue of the decorations of the chamber into which it opened. That at the eastern extremity was hung, for example, in blue—and vividly blue were its windows. The second chamber was purple in its ornaments and tapestries, and here the panes were purple. The third was green throughout, and so were the casements. The fourth was furnished and lighted with orange—the fifth with white—the sixth with violet. The seventh apartment was closely shrouded in black velvet tapestries that hung all over the ceiling and down the walls, falling in heavy folds upon a carpet of the same material and hue. But in this chamber only, the color of the windows failed to correspond with the decorations. The panes here were scarlet—a deep blood color. Now in no one of the seven apartments was there any lamp or candelabrum, amid the profusion of golden ornaments that lay scattered to and fro or depended from the roof. There was no light of any kind emanating from lamp or candle within the suite of chambers. But in the corridors that followed the suite, there stood, opposite to each window, a heavy tripod, bearing a brazier of fire that projected its rays through the tinted glass and so glaringly illumined the room. And thus were produced a multitude of gaudy and fantastic appearances. But in the western or black chamber the effect of the fire-light that streamed upon the dark hangings through the blood-tinted panes was ghastly in the extreme, and produced so wild a look upon the countenances of those who entered, that there were few of the company bold enough to set foot within its precincts at all.

It was in this apartment, also, that there stood against the western wall, a gigantic clock of ebony. Its pendulum swung to and fro with a dull, heavy, monotonous clang; and when the minute-hand made the circuit of the face, and the hour was to be stricken, there came from the brazen lungs of the clock a sound

which was clear and loud and deep and exceedingly musical, but of so peculiar a note and emphasis that, at each lapse of an hour, the musicians of the orchestra were constrained to pause, momentarily, in their performance, to hearken to the sound; and thus the waltzers perforce ceased their evolutions; and there was a brief disconcert of the whole gay company; and, while the chimes of the clock yet rang, it was observed that the giddiest grew pale, and the more aged and sedate passed their hands over their brows as if in confused reverie or meditation. But when the echoes had fully ceased, a light laughter at once pervaded the assembly; the musicians looked at each other and smiled as if at their own nervousness and folly, and made whispering vows, each to the other, that the next chiming of the clock should produce in them no similar emotion; and then, after the lapse of sixty minutes (which embrace three thousand and six hundred seconds of the Time that flies), there came yet another chiming of the clock, and then were the same disconcert and tremulousness and meditation as before.

But, in spite of these things, it was a gay and magnificent revel. The tastes of the duke were peculiar. He had a fine eye for colors and effects. He disregarded the *decora* of mere fashion. His plans were bold and fiery, and his conceptions glowed with barbaric lustre. There are some who would have thought him mad. His followers felt that he was not. It was necessary to hear and see and touch him to be *sure* that he was not.

He had directed, in great part, the movable embellishments of the seven chambers, upon occasion of this great *fête*; and it was his own guiding taste which had given character to the masqueraders. Be sure they were grotesque. There were much glare and glitter and piquancy and phantasm—much of what has been since seen in “Hernani.” There were arabesque figures with unsuited limbs and appointments. There were delirious fancies such as the madman fashions. There was much of the beautiful, much of the wanton, much of the *bizarre*, something of the terrible, and not a little of that which might have excited disgust. To and fro in the seven chambers there stalked, in fact, a multitude of dreams. And these—the dreams—writhed in and about, taking hue from the rooms, and causing the wild music of the orchestra to seem as the echo of their steps. And, anon, there strikes the ebony clock which stands in the hall of the velvet. And then, for a moment, all is still, and all is silent save the voice of the clock. The dreams are stiff-frozen as they stand. But the echoes of the chime die away—they have endured but an instant—and a light, half-subdued laughter floats after them as they depart. And now again the music swells, and the dreams live, and writhe to and fro more merrily than ever, taking hue from the many-tinted windows through which stream the rays from the tripods. But to the chamber which lies most westwardly of the seven, there are now none of the maskers who venture; for the night is waning away; and there flows a ruddier light through the blood-colored panes; and the blackness of the sable drapery appals; and to him whose foot falls upon the sable carpet, there comes from the near clock of ebony a muffled peal more solemnly emphatic than any which reaches *their* ears who indulge in the more remote gaieties of the other apartments.

But these other apartments were densely crowded, and in them beat feverishly the heart of life. And the revel went whirlingly on, until at length there

commenced the sounding of mid-night upon the clock. And then the music ceased, as I have told; and the evolutions of the waltzers were quieted; and there was an uneasy cessation of all things as before. But now there were twelve strokes to be sounded by the bell of the clock; and thus it happened, perhaps, that more of thought crept, with more of time, into the meditations of the thoughtful among those who revelled. And thus, too, it happened, perhaps, that before the last echoes of the last chime had utterly sunk into silence, there were many individuals in the crowd who had found leisure to become aware of the presence of a masked figure which had arrested the attention of no single individual before. And the rumor of this new presence having spread itself whisperingly around, there arose at length from the whole company a buzz, or murmur, expressive of disapprobation and surprise—then, finally, of terror, of horror, and of disgust.

In an assembly of phantasms such as I have painted, it may well be supposed that no ordinary appearance could have excited such sensation. In truth the masquerade license of the night was nearly unlimited; but the figure in question had out-Heroded Herod, and gone beyond the bounds of even the prince's indefinite decorum. There are chords in the hearts of the most reckless which cannot be touched without emotion. Even with the utterly lost, to whom life and death are equally jests, there are matters of which no jest can be made. The whole company, indeed, seemed now deeply to feel that in the costume and bearing of the stranger neither wit nor propriety existed. The figure was tall and gaunt, and shrouded from head to foot in the habiliments of the grave. The mask which concealed the visage was made so nearly to resemble the countenance of a stiffened corpse that the closest scrutiny must have had difficulty in detecting the cheat. And yet all this might have been endured, if not approved, by the mad revellers around. But the mummer had gone so far as to assume the type of the Red Death. His vesture was dabbled in *blood*—and his broad brow, with all the features of the face, was besprinkled with the scarlet horror.

When the eyes of Prince Prospero fell upon this spectral image (which with a slow and solemn movement, as if more fully to sustain its *rôle*, stalked to and fro among the waltzers) he was seen to be convulsed, in the first moment with a strong shudder either of terror or distaste; but, in the next, his brow reddened with rage.

“Who dares?” he demanded hoarsely of the courtiers who stood near him—“who dares insult us with this blasphemous mockery? Seize him and unmask him—that we may know whom we have to hang at sunrise, from the battlements!” It was in the eastern or blue chamber in which stood the Prince Prospero as he uttered these words. They rang throughout the seven rooms loudly and clearly—for the prince was a bold and robust man, and the music had become hushed at the waving of his hand.

It was in the blue room where stood the prince, with a group of pale courtiers by his side. At first, as he spoke, there was a slight rushing movement of this group in the direction of the intruder, who at the moment was also near at hand, and now, with deliberate and stately step, made closer approach to the speaker. But from a certain nameless awe with which the mad assumptions of the

mummer had inspired the whole party, there were found none who put forth hand to seize him; so that, unimpeded, he passed within a yard of the prince's person; and, while the vast assembly, as if with one impulse, shrank from the centres of the rooms to the walls, he made his way uninterruptedly, but with the same solemn and measured step which had distinguished him from the first, through the blue chamber to the purple—through the purple to the green—through the green to the orange—through this again to the white—and even thence to the violet, ere a decided movement had been made to arrest him. It was then, however, that the Prince Prospero, maddening with rage and the shame of his own momentary cowardice, rushed hurriedly through the six chambers, while none followed him on account of a deadly terror that had seized upon all. He bore aloft a drawn dagger, and had approached, in rapid impetuosity, to within three or four feet of the retreating figure, when the latter, having attained the extremity of the velvet apartment, turned suddenly and confronted his pursuer. There was a sharp cry—and the dagger dropped gleaming upon the sable carpet, upon which, instantly afterwards, fell prostrate in death the Prince Prospero. Then, summoning the wild courage of despair, a throng of the revellers at once threw themselves into the black apartment, and, seizing the mummer, whose tall figure stood erect and motionless within the shadow of the ebony clock, gasped in unutterable horror at finding the grave-cerements and corpse-like mask which they handled with so violent a rudeness, untenanted by any tangible form.

And now was acknowledged the presence of the Red Death. He had come like a thief in the night. And one by one dropped the revellers in the blood-bedewed halls of their revel, and died each in the despairing posture of his fall. And the life of the ebony clock went out with that of the last of the gay. And the flames of the tripods expired. And Darkness and Decay and the Red Death held illimitable dominion over all.

Edwin Arlington Robinson

Richard Cory*

From The Collected Poems of Edwin Arlington Robinson, revised by Edwin Arlington Robinson. Copyright © 1935, 1937 by The Macmillan Company; copyright renewed © 1963, 1965.

Whenever Richard Cory went down town,
We people on the pavement looked at him:
He was a gentleman from sole to crown,
Clean favored, and imperially slim.

*This selection is featured in the model student essay in Chapter 3.

And he was always quietly arrayed, And he was always human when he talked; But still he fluttered pulses when he said, “Good-morning,” and he glittered when he walked.	5
And he was rich—yes, richer than a king— And admirably schooled in every grace: In fine, we thought that he was everything To make us wish that we were in his place.	10
So on we worked, and waited for the light, And went without the meat, and cursed the bread; And Richard Cory, one calm summer night, Went home and put a bullet through his head.	15

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Information at a Glance

Approach	Purpose(s)	Assumption(s)
<i>Familiar</i>	To understand literature in the context of an author's biography and/or historical period.	Literature reflects the life and world of its author.
<i>Formalist</i>	To value a literary work for its own intrinsic properties.	Literature is an utterance of abstract, absolute truths about reality.
<i>Psychological</i>	To determine meanings that are suggested but not overtly stated.	(1) Literature comes from the unconscious of a writer, expressing meanings that even he or she may not recognize. (2) A character's nature is revealed by more than external actions: dreams, symbols, slips of language. Some literary patterns can be universally recognized.
<i>Archetypal</i>	To identify universal images and patterns of conduct that carry emotional power.	Some literary patterns are universally recognized.
<i>Marxist</i>	To reveal how those in control of the means of production manipulate the rest and thereby change the system.	Economics controls all aspects of a society. The material, not the spiritual, is all important.
<i>Feminist</i>	(1) To read with heightened awareness of the nature, social roles, and treatment of female characters.	(1) Because society is and has been basically patriarchal, the talents and products of women have been undervalued, leaving them without visible power.

(Continued)

Approach	Purpose(s)	Assumption(s)
	(2) To recognize ignored and undervalued female writers. (3) To explore more sexual identities than the traditional male/female binary.	(2) Sexual orientation is central to critical analysis and understanding.
<i>Reader-Response</i>	To include the reader in constructing the meaning of a text.	Whatever a text means is at least partially the product of a reader's interaction with it.
<i>Deconstructionist</i>	To demonstrate the multiplicity of meanings in a given text.	Meaning is always provisional, not stable, united, or unchanging.
<i>New Historicist</i>	To understand a text as a product and maker of complex and sometimes conflicting historical forces.	Because a text is the product of more than a single contributing source, it is not explainable simply as the reflection of a controlling idea of a given period.
<i>Postcolonialist</i>	To examine the literature of colonized peoples and that of the descendants of their colonizers, featuring what happens when one culture is dominated by another.	Physical conquest of a culture leads to loss or serious modification of it, resulting in uncertainty of identity for both the conquered and the colonizers, who live in a mixed culture often marked by contrasts and antagonisms, resentment, and blended practice.
<i>Multiculturalist</i>	To identify and analyze the literatures of racial and ethnic minorities in order to discover their unique characteristics and worldviews.	The literature of historically marginalized groups provides a rich source of works for analysis.
<i>Ecocritical</i>	To examine the relationship of literature and nature as a way to renew a reader's awareness of the nonhuman world and his or her responsibility to sustain it.	Because all life is inter-related, the impact of human activity on the environment should be minimized.

Strategy or Strategies	Strength	Weakness
Read literature as a reflection of major events, figures, and ideas of a period.	Provides a framework for tracing growth and development of literary ideas and styles.	Subordinates literary concerns to nonliterary ones.
Read closely to see how tensions in diction and style are resolved into a unified whole.	Shows how meaning is a product of form.	Looks for a single best interpretation.

(Continued)

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Strategy or Strategies	Strength	Weakness
Pay close attention to unconscious motivations and meanings expressed indirectly through dreams, language, and symbols.	Reveals meanings that are not explicitly stated.	Can degenerate into non-literary jargon or arrive at unjustified interpretations.
Identify characters or behaviors similar to those you have met in other narratives.	Deepens the emotional and thematic impact of a text.	Can overlook meaningful details in the search for universal patterns.
Identify the powerful individuals or groups in the text and show how they create the superstructure that controls the proletariat.	Connects literature with life—that is, with everyday concerns about economics, class, and power.	Is essentially nonliterary—that is, does not take aesthetic matters into account.
(1) Examine the roles and treatment of female characters. (2) Discover (or reintroduce) works by neglected female writers. (3) Look for fluidity of characters' sexual identities.	Gives attention to traditionally overlooked aspects of a text and to heretofore ignored writers.	Can become narrowly focused, leaving out other important aspects of a text.
Connect the life experiences and worldviews of the reader with the text.	Makes the reader an active coparticipant in creating a text, not simply a passive receiver of it.	Can produce idiosyncratic readings.
Identify those places where misstatements, gaps, and inconsistencies in a text undermine what it claims to be saying.	Opens up a text to an unending series of new interpretations.	Uses difficult, specialized vocabulary.
Acknowledge all the social concerns that surround and infuse a text, particularly the power structures of the culture it depicts and that of the author's world.	Accepts any written text as worthy of serious analysis (not just those composed in traditional literary genres).	May neglect literary elements of a text for its political aspects.
Determine the stance of a text regarding colonialism, postcolonialism, and/or neocolonialism.	Generates understanding of cultures as well as texts.	Can be more concerned with social criticism than literary criticism.
Identify materials, purposes, and styles that are characteristic of a racial or ethnic minority.	Liberates the minority from dependence on mainstream standards of performance.	Divides cultural groups from one another.
Pull traditionally disregarded elements of nature into the center of your reading.	Makes the reader aware of his or her obligation to treat nature with respect.	Is more interested in social change than in literary analysis.



Glossary of Terms Used in Literary Criticism

Note that terms found in boldface type throughout the text are defined in the glossary.

Affective fallacy Concern for the effect a work has on the reader. According to the formalists, to use affect as a criterion of judgment is a mistake because doing so judges a poem by what it *does* instead of what it *is*. Aristotle's theory of catharsis as an element of tragic drama is a strong example of the affective fallacy at work.

Allusion A brief reference to a character, person, object, event, or situation outside the work in which it is made. Well-known biblical **allusions** are common in all **genres**, but modern poets sometimes make more obscure references that assume a considerable breadth of learning to understand.

Ambiguity Wording that suggests more than one meaning or interpretation. It is to be avoided in some **genres**, such as non-fiction prose, but can be powerfully suggestive in others, such as poetry. By calling up more than a single meaning, ambiguous wording can add to the thematic complexity in a work.

Androcentric A term used to describe attitudes, practices, or social organizations that are based on the assumption that men are the model of being. Feminists challenge that belief because it ignores or

marginalizes the characteristics of female existence.

Anima/animus The life force within an individual. It is both life itself and the creator of life. In the male, it is made up of female elements of the self (the anima), and in the female, it is composed of the male elements of the self (the animus). It belongs to the personal and **collective unconscious**. The term is important in Jungian theory.

Anthropomorphism Attribution of human characteristics to things not human.

Aphorism A short, succinct statement of a principle or piece of wisdom. It is notable more for its wisdom than its wit. It lends itself to frequent quotation.

Aporia A point in a text where contradictions cannot be resolved, causing it to deconstruct itself. Traditionally it refers to a condition of uncertainty or doubt, though Derrida has used it to refer to terms that resist being divided into **binary oppositions**.

Archetypes Inherited ideas or ways of thinking generated by the experiences of the human race that exist in the unconscious of an individual. They are universal

and recurring **images**, patterns, or **motifs** representing typical human experience that often appear in literature, art, fairy tales, myths, dreams, and rituals. They unite the conscious and the unconscious, helping to make an individual whole.

Base The methods of production in a given society. Marxist theory argues that the modes of production of material life determine the ideological **superstructure** (composed of state, legal, social, and political forms).

Binary opposition Paired opposites in which the first named is the dominant figure—e.g., male/female, white/black, making the dichotomy an evaluative hierarchy. Such opposing elements are always unstable, however, because they can be inverted. The term is important to **structuralists** and deconstructionists.

Black aesthetic Methods of literary interpretation that are concerned with the materials black artists work with, the purpose of their work, and how they go about doing it.

Bourgeoisie The name given by Marx to the owners of the means of production in a society. It is a term taken from French, used to refer to members of the middle class—i.e., shopkeepers and merchants.

Carnival Mikhail Bakhtin's term for a social practice that mocks authority and reverses hierarchies. It challenges traditional power bases and opens the way to a new social order. He sees the novel as carnivalesque because it has the ability to challenge restrictive social forces, obliterate social hierarchies and blur distinctions among social classes. It can reverse the traditional systems of authority and order.

Collective unconscious The inherited experience of the human race that resides at a deep level of the psyche. Its contents come from recurrent life situations that are common to all human beings. They take the form of **archetypes** and are revealed in **images** and **symbols** that appear in dreams, literature, religions, and

mythologies. The concept of the collective unconscious is one of the major differences between the theories of Freud and Jung.

Colonialism The subjection of one **culture** by another. It may involve military conquest but also extends to the imposition of the dominant power's values and customs on those of the conquered peoples. It usually suggests some form of exploitation of the colonized peoples.

Commodification A Marxist term referring to the attitude of valuing things not for their utility but for their power to impress others or for their resale possibilities.

Condensation Freud's term for the workings of the unconscious in which a single word or **image** in a dream represents the intersections of a number of ideas of associations. The term or **image** condenses their unconscious meanings and emotions.

Connotation Secondary meanings and feelings associated with a word in addition to its denotative, or dictionary, meaning. Connotation can be affected by the context in which a word is used, although some words carry fairly universal secondary meanings. For example, to most people the word *home* suggests warm feelings associated with family.

Conspicuous consumption The obvious acquisition of things only for their **sign value** and/or **exchange value**.

Cosmic irony The suggestion that the universe manipulates events so that characters in a narrative are led to anticipate logical outcomes of their actions that do not occur. The novels of Thomas Hardy frequently depict such situations, suggesting that individuals are mocked by whatever power controls their lives.

Cultural colonization The imposition of the beliefs and social practices of a dominant power on a subjugated one, resulting in loss or change of the native **culture**. Cultural colonization often follows political or military colonization.

Cultural materialism The British counterpart of new literary historicism, significantly influenced by Marxist principles.

Cultural studies A broadly inclusive term that refers to the work of literary theorists, philosophers, and critics who focus on the work of marginalized, overlooked, and repressed groups. It seeks to go beyond institutional politics and look at social change from the perspective of **culture** and cultural production as manifested in social life, class relations, institutions, and more. It is interdisciplinary in its approach.

Culture The sum of the social patterns, traits, and products of a particular time or group of people. It includes the ideas, customs, skills, and arts that characterize the era or the community.

Dark greens Deeply committed ecologists who advocate a complete return to nature, a move that is not feasible for most people. They differ from environmentalists known as **light greens**, who are less zealous in their commitment to minimizing humankind's impact on nature.

Defamiliarization A term coined by the **Russian formalists** to refer to the artful aspects of a work that, by making the familiar seem strange, awaken the reader to new experiences and understandings. They change a reader's perception of even an ordinary object so that he seems to be seeing it as if for the first time.

Demonic other The view that those who are different from oneself are not only backward but also savage, even evil. The term is frequently used in postcolonial studies.

Denotation The core or specific meaning of a word, without any associated or suggested meanings.

Diachronic An approach to the study of language that traces how and why words have evolved in meaning or sound over time. Saussure sees it in opposition to a **synchronic** approach that studies the state

of a language at one particular stage of its development.

Dialectical materialism The theory that history develops neither in a random fashion nor in a linear one but instead as a struggle between contradictions that ultimately find resolution in a synthesis of the two sides. For example, conflicts of social classes that are defined by economic relations of production lead to new social systems.

Dialogism The belief that language (all forms of speech and writing) is always a dialogue consisting of at least one speaker, one listener/respondent, and a relationship between the two. It opposes the view that language is an utterance that issues from a single speaker or writer—i.e., that it is monologic (see **monologism**). Dialogism is a key concept in Mikhail Bakhtin's theory of language.

Dialogized heteroglossia. A characteristic of prose in general and the novel in particular, according to Mikhail Bakhtin. The novel features a diversity of voices (making it heteroglossic) in ongoing responses to each other (making it dialogic). It recounts multiple experiences and worldviews in frequent interactions, some of them actual and some of them fictive.

Différance The term Jacques Derrida used to indicate that meaning is based on differences and is always postponed. (Its spelling suggests two meanings, both difference and deferral.) If language and meaning have no origin and no end, it is ultimately undecidable.

Discourse Ways of thinking, talking, and writing about the world. The term usually refers to a relatively formal discussion that has a serious purpose. Modern linguistics supports the view that discourse is not subjective, but instead promotes subjectivity by making human beings subjects.

Displacement Like **condensation**, a Freudian reference to the workings of the unconscious. It refers to the process of moving emotions that are related to an idea or person to a less important object.

Double consciousness A term coined by W. E. B. DuBois that refers to the “sense of always looking at one’s self through the eyes of others.” He describes it as the experience of perceiving oneself to be “an American, a Negro; two souls, two thoughts, two unreconciled strivings; two warring ideals in one dark body, whose dogged strength alone keeps it from being torn asunder.”

Double-voicedness A term used by Henry Louis Gates to refer to evidence in literature of the black person’s sense of “twoness” that comes from being both an American and a Negro. Gates identifies this quality as the source of the uniqueness of black literature.

Dramatic irony A form of irony in which the audience knows what is about to happen but the characters do not. A famous example is found in *Oedipus Rex*, in which Oedipus seeks to find his father’s murderer without knowing that the killer is he himself.

Dyadic pair (dyads) A term used by Claude Lévi-Strauss to refer to basic oppositions in a narrative that hold symbolic and thematic meanings. They interact to form the larger structure to which the narrative belongs.

Ecocriticism A school of literary criticism that studies the relationship between literature and the surrounding environment. It is sometimes referred to as literary ecology, ecopoetics, environmental literary criticism, green cultural studies, or (somewhat mockingly) as compoststructuralism.

Ego In Freudian terms, the central part of the psyche that mediates between the inner self and the external world. It also mediates between the contradictory demands of the **id** and the **superego**, partly by postponing the id’s urges or by diverting them into socially acceptable actions.

Environment The surrounding landscape. For ecocritics environment differs from **nature**, which refers to the landscape

as it was before it was impacted by technology.

Episteme The system that defines the conditions for how a particular age views its world. Its original meaning in Greek was “knowledge,” but in Foucault’s use it is not a body of knowledge but the conditions that allow knowledge to exist or to be limited. It underlies the interaction of **discourses** of the period.

Essentialism The idea that a person’s true identity is composed of fixed and unchanging properties. The theory has been challenged by feminists who see references to “an eternal female nature” as pejorative and reductive. On the other hand, some feminists have themselves been accused of being essentialists in their emphasis on specific differences that women embody, thereby suggesting “the eternal feminine” once again.

Eurocentrism The assumption that European ideals and experiences are the standard by which all other **cultures** are to be measured and judged inferior. It is hotly challenged by those who value cultures that exist outside of Europe, particularly those that have been colonized.

Etymology The study of the origins of words or of a specific word.

Exchange value A Marxist term referring to an assessment of the worth of something based on what it can be traded or sold for. The amount of human labor-power contained in it is the basis for establishing the value of a commodity.

Exotic other The view that those who are different from oneself possess an inherent dignity and beauty, perhaps because of their more undeveloped, natural state of being. It is a theme of postcolonial studies.

Explication de texte A detailed analysis of small units that compose a work, including words, meanings, and images, and of how they work together to create meaning. The method originated in France. Its purpose is to discover the structure and meaning of a work. Frequently the simpler

term *explication* is used to refer to general interpretation of a text.

False consciousness People's acceptance of an unfavorable social system without protest or questioning. When they assume that the difficult conditions under which they live are simply the logical way for things to be, they are exhibiting false consciousness.

Figure of speech Words used in more than their literal sense. They may appear as similes, metaphors, synecdoches, metonymies, or other forms.

Folk tradition Customs, language, legends, beliefs, and attitudes characteristic of peoples generally regarded as unsophisticated, possibly unlettered. In literature folk traditions are contained in ballads, epics, tall tales, fairy tales, myths, and riddles.

Geneva critic A reader who attempts to identify with the unique consciousness of a writer through his written works. Sometimes referred to as "critics of consciousness," such readers seek to discover how characters, imagery, and style are projections of the author's own awareness and feelings. The purpose is to participate in, perhaps even identify, with the writer's essential being. The Geneva critics sometimes assemble widely disparate examples of a writer's work or even examine the total oeuvre to demonstrate recurring themes and **motifs** that are unique to that author.

Genre An artistic form. The categories are based on commonalities of form, technique, and content. In literature the **genres** are sometimes broadly defined (e.g., as drama, poetry, fiction) and sometimes more narrowly delineated (e.g., as lyric, epic, essay, or novel).

Grammar The system of rules and codes that directs literary interpretation. **Structuralist** A critic who seeks to reveal the grammar of literature.

Gynocriticism A movement that examines the distinctive characteristics of the female experience, in contrast to earlier methods that explained the female by using male models. As applied to literature, gynocriticism is concerned with developing new ways to study the writing of women. The school seeks to make visible a continuous female experience that could easily be ignored by Marxist critics intent on examining class conflicts or by **structuralists** who are interested in diagrams and systems.

Hegemony Dominance of one state or group over another.

Heteroglossia Mikhail Bakhtin's term for the interplay of the numerous forms of social speech that people use as they go about their daily lives. It refers to the manner in which their diverse ways of speaking—their varied vocabularies, accents, expressions, and rhetorical strategies—mix with each other. It can be described as living language because it features multiplicity and variety, as well as suggestions of different professions, age groups, and backgrounds.

Heterosexual privilege The assumption that heterosexuality is the standard by which sexual practice is measured. Objections to it from the gay and lesbian community mirror those of feminists who protested against explanations of female experience that were based on male models.

Historical situation The ideological atmosphere generated by **material circumstances**. According to Marxist theory, to understand social or political events and conditions, one must have a grasp of the material circumstances and the historical situation in which they occur.

Homophobia The fear, dislike, and/or disapproval of homosexuals and homosexuality. It is observable in demeaning

images, casual comments, jokes, and other forms of expression.

Horizon of expectations A term generated by Hans Robert Jauss to refer to the linguistic and aesthetic expectations of a reading public. It is important in the work of the **receptionists**, who look for what readers of a particular era valued and looked for in a literary work.

Hybridity/syncretism A postcolonial term referring to the quality of **cultures** that have characteristics of both the colonizers and the colonized. Marked by conflicts and **tensions**, they are continually changing and evolving. Hybridity challenges traditional identities based on class, race, and gender and offers a release from singular identities.

Id An unconscious part of the psyche that is the source of psychic energy and desires. It operates for the sole purpose of finding pleasure through gratification of its instinctual needs. Part of the **ego** merges with the id, drawing energy from it through sublimation.

Ideology A belief system. It is a set of values and ways of thinking through which people see the world they live in and explain why it exists. Two principal elements of the ideology of Marxist theory are expressed in figurative terms as a **superstructure** and a **base** that generates it.

Image A mental picture created by references to the senses: visual, auditory, tactile, olfactory, gustatory, thermal, and kinesthetic. On occasion an image can appeal to more than one sense, as in “I heard the rainbow sing.” Images are often the basis of figurative language because they provide a way to talk in concrete terms about abstract matters.

Imaginary Order A term used by Jacques Lacan to refer to the prelinguistic psychic stage at the beginning of which the infant is unaware of its separateness from the mother or any other object that serves its needs. It includes the **mirror stage**, during which the infant begins to

recognize its separateness from other objects and to develop a sense of self, which is actually illusory since it is based on an external reflected image. The other two developmental orders, according to Lacan, are the **Real Order** and the **Symbolic Order**.

Implied reader Wolfgang Iser’s term for a reader with the skills and qualities required by a text if it is to have the intended effect. The work itself helps to create that reader by using patterns, points of view, and withheld information to indicate the role he or she is to play as the narrative unfolds. It invites certain responses that, when made, make the real reader the one that is implied by the text.

Individuation A term used by Carl Jung to denote successful discovery, acceptance, and integration of one’s own **shadow**, **anima/animus**, and **persona**. It is a psychological maturation.

Intentional fallacy Concern for the author’s purpose in writing the work. To formalists, this way of determining the meaning and effectiveness of a work is erroneous, because it is based on information outside the text.

Interpellation A term used by Louis Althusser to refer to the process by which the working class is manipulated to accept the **ideology** of the dominant class.

Interpretive communities Stanley Fish’s term for groups of competent, even sophisticated, readers who make meaning based on assumptions and strategies they hold in common. They are agreed as to what constitutes literature and have mastered the practices that allow them to read literary texts.

Irony A statement or situation in which the intended meaning is the opposite of what is literally said, done, or expected. It can take several forms, including **Socratic irony**, **dramatic irony**, and **cosmic irony**. It was prized by the formalists, who recognized the complexity and suggestiveness it brought to a poem. A famous

example of irony is Jonathan Swift's *A Modest Proposal*, in which the essayist proposes that the Irish sell their children to the British for food. The indirection of signifying in African American **culture**, created by saying one thing and meaning another, is another practice of irony.

Jouissance Jacques Lacan's term for the sense of being whole. In his earlier work it seems to refer to enjoyment, but from the 1960s onward it carries sexual **connotations**. The French noun can also mean orgasm, and Lacan pushes it to refer to an intense eroticism associated with a death drive that goes well beyond the pleasure principle.

Langue The language that is used by all members of a particular language community. As Saussure conceives of it, it is composed of **signs** that are organized into a system that can be used to express ideas. Since the signs are arbitrary and conventional, it is the differences among them that give them meaning, making *langue* an organized system of differences.

L'Écriture féminine A term used by French critics to designate women's writing. It is sometimes referred to as "writing the body." This experimental form of writing celebrates femininity and reflects on a society that is dominated by the **image** of the **phallus**. It often weaves creative and theoretical texts together by ignoring traditional distinctions between theory and fiction.

Lexies A word coined by Roland Barthes to indicate units of meaning in a narrative. He classified them into five codes that he deemed to constitute the basic structure of all stories.

Libido A Freudian term referring to instinctual energies and desires that are derived from the **id**. Although Freud never defines it clearly, it is commonly used as a synonym for sexual energy.

Light greens Environmentalists who support conservation and limits. They differ from "**dark greens**," the deeply

committed ecologists who advocate a complete return to nature, a move that is not feasible for most people.

Logocentrism Belief in an absolute that grounds existence. Based on the Greek word *logos*, it expresses credence in a rational and structured cosmos, providing human beings with an explanation for their origin and their nature. In terms of language, it assumes that the linguistic system is capable of producing a spoken or written utterance that has a fixed, understandable meaning. Derrida's objections to logocentrism are central to his theories of deconstruction.

Material circumstances The economic conditions underlying the society. To understand social events, one must have a grasp of the material circumstances and the **historical situation** in which they occur.

Means, Objects, and Manner

Aristotle's classification of literary forms as set forth in his *Poetics*. The term *means* refers to the medium of the work—for example, music, prose, or verse; *objects* refers to the nature of the situation or characters being imitated; and *manner* is the **point of view**, which can be the voice of a character, the author's own voice, or the voice of an actor.

Metaphysics of presence Beliefs including **binary oppositions**, **logocentrism**, and **phonocentrism** that have been the basis of Western philosophy since Plato. They are grounded in the assumption that conscious, integrated selves are at the center of human activity. Derrida and other deconstructionists raise serious objections to such beliefs.

Mimicry Imitation of the dress, manners, and language of the dominant **culture** by an oppressed one. The term is found in postcolonial criticism.

Mirror stage A term used by Jacques Lacan to refer to an event that occurs between the ages of six and eighteen months involving an infant seeing him- or herself in a mirror and identifying with the **image**

that appears there. The reflection signals a functional unity that the child has not yet developed. Since the child is not an **image** in a mirror, the experience begins a life-long misrecognition of identity that eventually leads to alienation.

Misogyny The hatred of women, especially by a man. Feminists critics are quick to note its presence in works of literature.

Monologism The assumption that language issues from a single speaker, in contrast to **dialogism**, which involves at least two speakers. It honors a unified discourse cleansed of differences that interrupt one accepted way of using language. According to Mikhail Bakhtin, monologic language operates according to centripetal force, forcing everything into a single form that emanates from one central source. It standardizes language and rhetorical forms, ridding itself of differences in an effort to establish a single way of speaking and writing.

Monomyth Northrop Frye's term for literature, a self-contained universe that incorporates the indifferent world of nature into archetypal forms that serve the needs and desires of human beings. It is composed of four **mythoi**.

Motif A recurring phrase, **image**, scene or theme in a work. Its function is to unify the piece. The term is also applied to musical compositions in which a melody is repeated throughout.

Mytheme Claude Lévi-Stauss's term for the smallest elements used in the analysis of myths. They are used to reveal larger, more universal structures. He chose the name for its reference to phonemes, Saussure's term for the smallest phonological unit. Mythemes are analogous to the functions named by Vladimir Propp in his study of Russian folk tales.

Myth A narrative that purports to explain why something exists or why something happens. Myths often feature acts by supernatural characters and develop according to archetypal patterns. They establish

social customs and rules that control a people's behavior. They usually involve ritual observances.

Mythoi Four narrative patterns that, according to Northrop Frye, exhibit the structural principles of the various **genres**. He associated each (comedy, romance, tragedy, and satire) with a season of the world of nature, incorporating that world into a verbal universe that human beings understand because it serves human needs.

Narrative functions Rules that, according to Vladimir Propp, generate narratives. They do not all appear in any one work, but those that do must appear in the order in which he listed them. His work was important in the development of **narratology**.

Narratology The structuralist study of narrative plots. Influential in its development have been Claude Lévi-Strauss's study of myths and Vladimir Propp's study of the morphology of Russian folk tales. It seeks to provide a formal description of narrative possibilities. It is not intended to evaluate a work.

Nature The environment before it was impacted by technology. For ecocritics it is an inclusive term used to refer to the land, its flora and fauna, its waterways, living creatures, and the ecosystem that nourishes them.

Negotiation The relationship between a text and its context, both the one that produced it and those that consume it. The assumption is that each affects the other in significant ways.

Neocolonialism Domination of a developing nation by international corporations attracted by cheap labor and manipulable political and legal systems. It is the modern version of colonization in which militarism has been replaced by economic forces.

Oedipal attachment Sigmund Freud's theory that around the age of five a boy perceives his father to be a rival for the love of his mother. The desire to possess

the mother and to be rid of the rival father can be repressed but continue into adulthood, leading to aberrant behavior. The term is drawn from Sophocles's tragedy *Oedipus the King*.

other Jacques Lacan's term (spelled with a lower case "o") to refer to the reflection an infant mistakenly takes to be the self during the **mirror stage** of development.

The infant thinks the reflection is real and uses what it sees to create the ego, the sense of "I." It is only an illusion, however, and we are, in actuality, not complete selves. Thus the "self" is always manufactured by the erroneous acceptance of an external image for an internal identity.

Lacan refers to it as the "other" because it is not the actual self, only an image outside of the self. The term is used in another sense by postcolonial theorists to refer to the negative view of subjected peoples held by their colonizers. It assumes that those who are different from oneself are inferior beings.

Other Those remaining elements that exist outside the self, objects and people that the infant comes to know before becoming aware of its own "other." When the infant realizes it is not connected to that which serves its needs, when it recognizes the Other and its own "other," he begins to enter the **Symbolic Order**.

The term is used in another sense by postcolonial theorists to refer to colonized peoples. It carries with it the negative view of them held by their colonizers, who assume that those who are different from themselves are inferior beings.

Paradox A statement that seems to contradict itself but is actually true. An example is Wordsworth's comment that "the child is father of the man."

Paraphrase A reworded version of a passage or work, usually made by someone other than the original writer. To a formalist, it cannot substitute for what it restates.

Parody An effort to mock a person, an event, or a work of literature through

imitation and variation. It uses humor to ridicule and criticize.

Parole Individual verbalizations within the system called *langue*. According to Saussure, whereas *langue* is the social aspect of language, *parole* consists of particularized speech acts. The dialectic between the two, wherein *parole* can affect *langue*, is responsible for evolution of the language.

Patriarchal A term describing an institution or social system that is headed and directed by a male. It can also refer to someone who approves of such a system. The patriarch, usually an older, venerated person, may be the founder or current ruler of the group. Feminists regard it as being synonymous with "male domination."

Performative A term that refers to a locution that is also the act it names. For example, in a marriage ceremony the words "I take this man to be my lawfully wedded husband" are not just a spoken statement, but also the act of marriage itself. Judith Butler uses the term to refer to the ongoing construction of gender that begins when someone says "It's a girl" at the moment of birth.

Persona Carl Jung's term for the social mask that an individual constructs and wears to face others. It is a blending of what the person is and what society expects him or her to be. It is the being that other people know as one's self.

Personal conscious A state of awareness of the present moment. Once that moment has passed, it moves into the realm of the **personal unconscious**. According to Jung, it is one of the three parts of the human psyche, the other two being the personal unconscious and the **collective unconscious**.

Personal unconscious A storehouse of past personal experience no longer extant in the **personal conscious**. In Jung's theory, it is one of the three parts of the human psyche, the other two being the personal conscious and the **collective unconscious**.

Phallic symbol A masculine **symbol**. It is recognizable because it is convex. That is, its length exceeds its diameter.

Phallus A term used by Jacques Lacan that refers to a privileged **signifier**, the **symbol** of power that gives meaning to other objects. Desired by the mother, it becomes an object of identification for the child, who wants to satisfy the mother's desire and its own desire for the mother. Thus has Lacan reworked Freud's concept of the Oedipus complex.

Phenomenologist One who subscribes to a branch of philosophy that asserts that the perceiver of an object plays a central role in determining meaning. In fact, the person and the object it is aware of are deemed to be inseparable. As applied to literature, a work is created when an author directs his attention toward an object and records the act in a text. A reader, in what is called "active reading," reexperiences the act, but also fills in elements that have not been fully realized, making him or her a co-creator.

Phenomenological critics Critics whose philosophical perspective assumes that a thinking subject and the object of which it is aware are inseparable. The **Geneva critics**, who read a text as the consciousness of an author put into words, are often described as practicing phenomenological criticism.

Phonocentrism The belief that speech is privileged over writing. Derrida argues that the assumption that it is only the acoustic differences between phonemes that give language meaning makes modern linguistics logocentric.

Poetics A general descriptive theory of literature. It does not refer solely to poetry or verse alone. Instead, it tries to define and describe the elements that create a work's "literariness." The earliest such study was Aristotle's *Poetics*. More recently it has been carried on in the work of the **structuralists**. The **Russian formalists** considered poetics to be the proper subject of literary study.

Point of view The perspective from which a narrative is told. If the author chooses to use a character to relate events, he assumes a first-person point of view. The character may be a major participant in the events depicted, or a minor one who sits on the sidelines and observes. If the narrative is told by an anonymous but all-knowing storyteller, the point of view is said to be omniscient.

Polyphonic Mikhail Bakhtin's term for novels that depict a world in which the dialogue goes on ad infinitum without reaching a conclusion or closure. Its structure is not predetermined to demonstrate the author's worldview, nor are the characters drawn to exemplify it. It is typified by the novels of Dostoyevsky, in which the reader hears many voices uttering contradictory and inconsistent statements in the context of a real-life event.

Polyrhythms Short, uneven, explosive lines in a poem. According to Don Lee, they are one of seven characteristics commonly found in the work of black poets.

Postcolonialism The study of the global effects of European colonization. It seeks to analyze **cultures** whose traditional language, laws, religion, and literature have been affected by domination from Europe. There is considerable disagreement about which cultures should be included and some disagreement as to whether it is limited to the period following physical and/or political withdrawal of an oppressive power or whether it includes the entire period of colonization.

Postcolonial literary criticism Analysis that looks to uncover the colonialist or anticolonialist ideologies in a text. It frequently brings marginalized characters and events to the center of a reading or looks at how colonialism initiated pejorative cultural stereotypes.

Postcolonial literature The writings produced by members of the indigenous **culture** or by settlers (and their

descendants) who have ties to both the invading culture and the oppressed one. (Agreement about the inclusion of the latter is not universal.) In English-speaking nations, the term usually refers to the literature of former colonies of the British Empire.

Poststructuralism Theories (including deconstruction, new historicism, postcolonial, and neo-Freudian theory) that are based on Ferdinand de Saussure's linguistic concepts but that at the same time undermine them. The term is used loosely, making it difficult to arrive at a succinct definition, but its various manifestations find points of commonality in their acceptance of the instability of meaning, their rejection of belief in metaphysical origins of **discourse**, and their suspicions of scientific systems.

Power The ability or official capacity to exercise control. According to Michel Foucault, knowledge is a form of power, and the search for knowledge manifests a will to exercise power over others. It is not an object, but a group of forces in which power meets with resistance.

Production theory The name given to Louis Althusser's ideas about the ability of literature and art to change a society's **base**. By creating and celebrating its own cultural artifacts, the **proletariat** can produce a revolution that replaces the **hegemony** of the dominant class with its own.

Proletariat The name given by Marx to the workers in a society. Its members have nothing but their labor to sell to survive, and in a capitalist system they are deemed by Marxists to be traditionally exploited.

Psychobiography The use of a psychoanalytic approach to writing the life of an author. A psychobiographer traces the subject's psychological development by examining the events of his life and looking for evidence of himself in his writings. Using Freudian theory principally, the psychobiographer looks for unconscious motivations and desires in an effort to

discover the usually overlooked forces in a writer's maturation.

Race, Milieu, et Moment According to Hippolyte Taine, these three major factors determine a work's uniqueness. By *race*, Taine referred to national characteristics that are typically found in works of art produced by the creative artists of a given country. By *milieu*, he meant the artist's environment. He used *moment* to refer to the less personal influences in a writer's life, to those that govern not the individual but the age.

Real Order A term used by Jacques Lacan to refer to the psychic state of the infant in which there is no language, no loss, lack, or absence. As one of the three orders that structure human existence in Lacanian theory, it is characterized by wholeness, fullness, and unity with the mother. It precedes the development of a sense of the self as a being that is separate and apart from others. The other stages of development include the **Imaginary Order** and the **Symbolic Order**.

Reception Theory A historical approach to a work that involves examining the changing responses to it on the part of the general reading public over a period of time. It can be viewed as an historical application of reader response theory, the difference being that instead of focusing on a single reader at one particular time, it looks at how readers in general have responded to a work over a long period of time. The process of revising critical interpretations and evaluations of a text is referred to as a "dialectic" or "dialogue" between a text and an ongoing series of readers.

Reflectionism A theory of Marxist critics that the **superstructure** of a society mirrors its economic base and, by extension, that a text reflects the society that produced it.

Reflectionist A critic who practices **reflectionism** for the purpose of discovering how characters and their relationships typify and reveal class conflict, the

socioeconomic system, or the politics of a time and place.

Russian formalism A school of criticism active in Russia and Czechoslovakia in the early part of the twentieth century that worked to establish a scientific basis for explaining how literary devices produce aesthetic effects. Its members advocated examination of the linguistic and structural elements of a work, rejecting methods or knowledge from other fields of study as extraneous to literary scholarship. Its leaders included Viktor Shklovsky and Roman Jakobson. It was abolished by the Soviet government in 1930 when its followers refused to examine literature through the lens of its political ideology. In the 1940s and 1950s it indirectly influenced the development of the New Criticism.

Sardonic comedy The practice of making fun of adversity, as in jokes. The effect can be bitter, sarcastic, or ironic.

Satire A literary work that ridicules the folly or stupidity of a person, a type of person, an institution, nation, or even humankind. It differs from comedy, which generates laughter for its own sake, in that it evokes amusement to point out human vice and foolishness. It can be a potent weapon.

Self-positioning The announcement of one's own political and philosophical leanings. Critics working from a new historicist perspective recognize their inability to be purely objective in their studies, making it important to acknowledge their social stance and biases to their readers. It constitutes an ethical responsibility.

Semiology A science proposed by Saussure that investigates meaning through **signs** observable in cultural phenomena. Sometimes called semiotics, it seeks to discover the laws that govern signs. The field was significantly broadened by Barthes, whose concept of it included all sign-systems in play in a society.

Semiotics Another study of signs, this one pioneered by Charles Sanders Peirce

in the United States. It differs little from the work begun by Saussure and Barthes, except that it has continued to grow and develop.

Shadow Carl Jung's term for the dark, unattractive aspects of the self that reside in the **personal unconscious**. An individual's impulse is to reject the shadow and project it onto someone or something else.

Sign The combination of a **signifier** and a **signified**, according to Saussurean linguistics. (It is not a combination of an object and a name for the object.) As there is no logical connection between the signifier and the signified, a sign is simply arbitrary. Signs are distinguished from one another by their phonic differences. It is the basic unit of the analysis of language.

Sign value An assessment of something based on how impressive it makes a person look. Marxists draw distinctions between **sign value**, **use value**, and **exchange value**.

Signified The conceptual meaning indicated by a **signifier**. It is one part of a **sign**.

Signifier A conventional sound utterance or written mark. It is one part of a **sign**.

Signifying/Signifyin' A clever, playful, but indirect way of giving an opinion about another person. It is part of the African-American vernacular and literary practices from the Harlem Renaissance of the 1920s, but it is found in both its musical and oral traditions. The second form of the word is used by Henry Louis Gates to indicate pronunciation.

Signifying Monkey The master Trickster of African-American folktales who embodies the practice of signifying. He outwits his adversaries by using double talk. The signifying monkey is important in the theories of Henry Louis Gates but widely recognized by other African-American artists as well.

Social constructivist One who supports the idea that human identity is formed by the **culture** into which one is born.

Socialist Realism Works of fiction that depict Marxist views of the struggle between social classes. Through the 1930s and for decades thereafter it was the doctrine that governed the work of Soviet writers. Such works typically recount narratives that feature oppressive bourgeois capitalists and virtuous members of the **proletariat**. Life under the Soviet Socialist system is depicted as happy and fulfilling.

Socratic irony A rhetorical device used by Plato in Socrates's *Dialogues*. The narrator, who pretends not to understand the comments of his respondent, asks seemingly innocent questions that eventually demonstrate the opposing point of view to be ill conceived.

Spheres of action Seven character types formulated by Vladimir Propp. They are based on the types of actions they perform.

Structuralism A science that seeks to understand how systems work. It sees any cultural product or activity to be a signifying system with a self-sufficient and self-determining structure of interrelationships. Its practitioners try to describe the underlying (and not necessarily visible) principles by which systems exist.

Structuralist A critic who analyzes literature following principles of modern linguistic theory. Structuralist critics seek to uncover the rules and codes by which a work is written and read and thereby to reveal the **grammar** of literature. They make an analysis by applying linguistic concepts (such as the differences between phonemic and morphemic levels of organization) to a work of literature.

Structure How a work of literature makes a statement. For the Formalist critic the term refers to more than the external order of a poem or story. It is the whole that is produced by various structural elements working together to create a unified whole. Structure is a work's essential, basic meaning.

Subaltern A person of inferior status. The subordinate position of subalterns may

be based on gender, class, office, or caste. Subaltern writers seek to make their marginalized **cultures**, which are largely unrecognized by history, known and valued for their past and present. The term figures largely in postcolonial studies.

Subject An ambiguous term that is used by postmodernists to refer to a person. The practice serves to shift the source of meaning away from the individual toward structures and ideologies. It undermines the premise that the individual has a stable sense of self or can be the center of experience.

Superego The part of the psyche that provides discipline and restraint by forcing unacceptable desires back into the unconscious. It is formed early on by parents and later by social institutions and other models.

Superstructure The social, political, and ideological systems and institutions—for example, the values, art, and legal processes of a society—that are generated by the **base**, the socioeconomic system. There is some disagreement among Marxists about the manner and degree of influence the base and superstructure have on each other.

Supplementation An ambiguous term devised by Derrida to refer to the lack existing in speech that must be complemented by writing. It is part of his argument regarding **logocentrism**'s practice of privileging speech over writing.

Symbol Someone or something that is a literal presence but is also a representation of something beyond himself, herself, or itself. The physical object or person usually refers to something abstract. Some symbols are “conventional” or “public,” readily recognized by members of a particular **culture**. Others are “personal” or “private,” making them more difficult to interpret. Poets are often given to using the latter.

Symbolic Order A term used by Jacques Lacan to refer to the psychic stage of

development in which an individual learns language and it shapes his or her identity by taking the place of what is lacking and giving the speaker the capacity to name the self as “I.” (During that process it overlaps to some degree with the Imaginary.) The Symbolic also initiates socialization by setting up rules of behavior and putting limits on desire. It is ruled by what Lacan calls the Law of the Father, because it is the father who enforces cultural norms and laws. The other Lacanian orders are the **Real** and the **Imaginary Orders**.

Synchronic An approach to the study of language that searches for the principles that govern its functions by examining a language at one particular point in time. Saussure sees it in opposition to a **diachronic** approach, which traces the changes that have taken place in a language throughout its history. Most schools of modern linguistics are synchronic.

Tension A term devised by Allen Tate and used by other Formalists to refer to the energy created by conflicting elements in a work, usually appearing in the form of **ambiguity**, **irony**, and **paradox**. It occurs when such elements resist coming together easily or comfortably to form a unified whole.

Textual criticism The process of establishing a version of a work that is as close as possible to what the author wrote or intended to be its final form for the purpose of giving the public an authorized version of that work. It involves comparing the various published texts of a work and original manuscripts to discover where they differ, then locating the source of errors and correcting them. The procedure requires the critic to render expert judgment, since during their lifetime authors sometimes approve differing versions of the same work for publication.

Thick description A term used by anthropologist Clifford Geertz to designate the collection of seemingly insignificant details that will reveal a **culture**. It is not a

neutral observation but an attempt to discover and understand the layers of meaning that reside in complex cultural structures and stories.

Trace The illusory effect of meaning that is left in a **signifier** by other signifiers—that is, what it is not. It is Derrida’s term for all the nonpresent meanings whose differences from the signifier give a statement the effect of having meaning in itself.

Transactional analysis An approach advocated by Louise Rosenblatt in which the critic considers how the reader interprets the text as well as how the text produces a response in him or her. It is a form of reader-response criticism in which meaning is created by the author and the audience.

Transcendental signified A fixed, ultimate center of meaning. It provides human beings stable, unchanging, ongoing meaning that grounds belief and actions. Over the ages it has gone by many names—God, truth, essence. Derrida denies its existence.

Übermensch Nietzsche’s strong, independent “superman” of the future who will be freed of all values except those he holds to be valid. The philosopher foresees the development of a higher man who will be joyful and wise, thereby overcoming the decadence and nihilism Nietzsche saw in the society of his day.

Unfinalizability Mikhail Bakhtin’s term for ongoing changes that occur in an individual, making it impossible to fully understand him or her. Because it is language that defines a person, and language is dialogic (see **dialogism**), one is always in a process of becoming and can never be completely known.

Unhomeliness The sense of being culturally displaced, of being caught between two **cultures** and not “at home” in either of them. The term was devised by Homi Bhabha to refer to the condition felt by those who lack a clearly defined cultural identity.

Unity The coherence of the elements of a work that creates a sense of an organic whole. It is created when all the various parts of a work (diction, **images**, **point-of-view**, **symbols**, meter, rhyme and more) interrelate with each other to make a statement. The Formalists look for a work's unifying elements.

Universalism The belief that a great work of literature deals with certain themes and characters whose significance and appeal are not limited by time or place. They are thought to be common to people in all civilizations regardless of geography or era. In actuality, the themes and characters alluded to are common in European literature, making universalism Eurocentric in nature.

Use value An appraisal of something based on what it can do. It evaluates an object according to the degree to which it satisfies a human need. The term is

important in Marxist theory, which is centered on the analysis of commodities.

Vulgar Marxism Another name for *reflectionism*. Those critics who practice it assume that literary works of the last century have been dominated by bourgeois **ideology**. They call for social realism to replace that impetus, a move that in practice can push art to conform to the political strictures of governing authorities.

Weltanschauung The author's worldview. It is a German term that means "manner of looking at the world." As such, it is used to refer to an individual's philosophy or how one views civilization and his or her relationship to it.

Yonic symbol A feminine symbol, particularly significant for Freudian critics. It is recognizable because it is concave—for example, a bowl or a cave.

CENGAGE **brain**.com



Index

A

- absence/presence binary, 161, 166
 academic prose, 7, 8
 active/passive binary, 109, 117, 118, 123
The Act of Reading (Iser), 131
 Adams, Abigail, 112–119, 254–256
 Adams, John, 112–119, 256–257
 Adams, Richard, 60
 Adler, Richard, 10
 aesthetic stance, 130
 affect, 47
 affective fallacy, 46, 347
 affective stylistics, 135
 African American feminist critics, 108, 115
 African American literature, 217–220
 multiculturalist analysis of a text, 220–226
 new historicist analysis of a text, 187–193
 student analysis on Langston Hughes, 233–238
 African Americans, challenge to power structure, 176
 African nations (postcolonial), 206, 207
Against Deconstruction (Ellis), 167
 aged, feminism and, 108
 Ain't I a Woman: Black Women and Feminism (hooks), 109
 allusions, 43, 347
 Althusser, Louis, 86
 ambiguity, 43, 45
 in “Araby,” 44
 definition of, 347
 American feminism, 106
The American Nature Writing Newsletter (now *ASLE News*), 242
 analysis, 24
Anatomy of Criticism (Frye), 20, 66
 androcentric, 119, 347
 anima/animus, 63, 347
The Annotated Pride and Prejudice (Shapard), 18
 antebellum life, 180
An Approach to Literature (Brooks, Warren, and Purser), 35
 Anthony, Susan B., 105
 anthropology, 62, 150
 cultural, 155, 156
 structural, 152
 anthropomorphism, 244, 347
 antirealism, in Lacanian theory, 71
 aphorisms, 223, 347
 aporia, 169, 347
 “Araby” (Joyce), 327–331
 formalist analysis of, 40–46
 mythological criticism, 66
 reader-response analysis of, 143–148
 archetypal criticism. *See* mythological criticism
Archetypal Patterns in Poetry (Bodkin), 63
 archetypes, 54
 definition of, 347
 in Jungian theory, 62
 Arnold, Matthew, 53

- Aristotle, 53, 129
 classification of forms, 19, 26
 dualism, 160
- art
 connection to dreams, in Freudian theory, 55
 controlling people, in Marxist theory, 86
 cultural materialists' view of, 182
 cultural studies view of, 176
 and ideologies, 92–95
 new literary historicists' view of, 181
- Arthur (King), 64, 66
- artists
 African American, 219, 220
 Freudian analysis of, 56, 61
- As I Lay Dying* (Faulkner), 16
- ASLE News*, 242
- Association for the Study of Literature and Environment (ASLE), 242
- audiences, 16
 effect on voice, 9
 importance of, 8
- Austen, Jane, 18
- Australia, 205, 206
 analysis of postcolonial literature, 209–216
- author's life, information about, 187–190, 195
- author's works, study of, 25
- “To Autumn” (Keats), 331
 ecocritical analysis of, 251–253
 mythological analysis of, 78–81
- autumn myth, 67
- The Awakening* (Chopin), 106, 132, 190
- B**
- Bakhtin, Mikhail, 36–39, 185
- balanced personality (Freudian theory), 58, 74
- Baldwin, James, 190, 191
- “Barn Burning” (Faulkner), 14–25, 99–101, 268–280
- Barrett, Michèle, 115
- Barthes, Roland, 156
- base, 89, 90, 348
- Bateson, F. W., 18
- Baym, Nina, 119
- Beauvoir, Simone de, 105
- Belenky, Mary Field, 107
- Bell, Curren, 105
- A Bend in the River* (Naipaul), 215
- Bennett, Andrew, 208
- Berlin, James, 176
- Berry, Wendell, 242
- Beyond the Blues* (Pool), 219
- Bhabba, Homi, 207, 208
 on hybridity/syncretism, 209
 on similarities in postcolonial literatures, 215
- bias, in interpretations of history, 179
- binary oppositions, 348
 in deconstruction, 160–162, 168
 example deconstructive analysis, 164–167
 in structuralism, 155
- biography. *See also* historic-biographical critical approaches
 formalist criticism and, 47
- black aesthetic, 219, 348
- Black Boy* (Wright), 218
- black feminist critics, 108, 109, 115
- Black Skin, White Masks* (Fanon), 208
- Bleich, David, 10, 135
- Blindness and Insight* (Man), 162
- blind spots (deconstruction), 162
- blues, 221
- Bodkin, Maud, 63
The Book of American Negro Poetry (Johnson), 218
- Booth, Wayne, 130
- bourgeoisie, 87, 91, 348
- Breuer, Joseph, 55
- Brewer, J. Mason, 218
- British Empire, 205
- British feminist critics, 106, 115
- British Petroleum, oil spill in Gulf of Mexico, 240
- Brontë, Charlotte, 105, 208
- Brooks, Cleanth, 34, 35, 49
- Buell, Lawrence, 240
- Butler, Judith, 110
- C**
- Canada, 205, 206
- canonization of androcentric texts, 119
- canonical counter discourse, 207
- capitalism
 evolution of, 88
 structure of, 87

- carnival, 40, 185, 348
Caroling Dusk (Cullen), 219
 Carson, Rachel, 242
 Cartesian philosophy, 150
 characters
 analysis in familiar approaches, 24
 analysis in Lacanian theory, 69
 decisions of, in Marxist criticism, 91
 in Jungian theory, 64
 minor, in postcolonialist analysis, 214
 structuralist study of, 157
 treatment of, in postcolonialist analysis, 210
 Chicago School, 20
 Chodorow, Nancy, 107
 Chopin, Kate, 106, 132, 190
 Chrysostom, John, 103
 circles in literary imagery, 66
 circular pattern, 43
 civil rights movement, 187, 219
 Civil War
 and American South, 15, 16
 battle of Gettysburg, 178
 Cixous, Hélène, 71, 106, 118
 class conflict, 91
 in “Barn Burning” (Faulkner), 99–101
 clustering exercises, 5, 10
 Cohen, Michael P., 242
 collaboration, 10–11
 Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 34, 41, 53
 “Kubla Khan,” 66
 “The Rime of the Ancient Mariner,” 63, 64
 collective unconscious, 54, 348
 colonialism, 204, 205
 attitude toward, in postcolonialist analysis, 209
 definition of, 216, 348
 colors, in Jungian theory, 65
 commodification, 88, 348
 Commonwealth literature, 206
The Communist Manifesto (Marx), 85, 88
 comparison and contrast, 24
 computers, assistance for writers, 12
 condensation, 59, 69, 348
 conflicts
 in Freudian theory, 58, 60, 61, 72
 in texts, 166, 169
 in writing of psychological criticism, 74
 connotations, 43
 conscience, 57
 consciousness
 ego in Freudian theory, 57
 false, in Marxist criticism, 92
 personal conscious in Jungian theory, 62
 conspicuous consumption, 89, 348
 context, in postcolonial analysis, 213
 contradictions and conflicts in texts, 166, 169
 Conway, Jill Ker, 125–128
 excerpt from “The Road from Coorain,” 257–267
 postcolonialist analysis of “The Road from Coorain,” 209–216
 cosmic irony, 348
 countries, characteristics of, 15, 26
The Country and the City (Williams), 241
Course in General Linguistics (Saussure), 153
 Cowley, Malcolm, 16
 Crane, R. S., 20
 Creativity, in Freudian theory, 61
 Creole and Cajun culture, 188–192
Critics and Criticism (Crane), 20
 Crowley, Sharon, 162
 Cullen, Countee, 219
 Culler, Jonathan, 163
 cultural anthropology, 155, 156
 influence on new historicism, 186
 cultural colonization, 206, 208, 216, 348
 cultural materialism, 182, 186, 349
 cultural studies, 175–198, 349
 branches of, 177
 new historicism, 177–203
 postcolonialism, 204–217, 228–233
 U.S. multiculturalism, 217–226, 233–238
 writing an analysis, 226
 culture, 16
 definition of, 349
 difficulty of defining, 176
 effects on critics as well as texts, 182
 influence on literature, 15
 in Marxist theory, 87, 94
 cycle of the seasons. *See* seasons, cycle of
- D**
- Daiches, David, 47, 49
 dark greens, 244, 349
 death and rebirth, in Jungian theory, 66

- deconstruction, 149–174
 definitions of, 163
 feminist criticism and, 109
 making an analysis, 162–167
 opposition to, as critical approach, 167
 practicing, 158–162
 questions to ask in writing analysis, 170
 structuralism and, 151–158
 writing an analysis, 168–171
- The Deconstruction of Literature* (Hirsch), 167
- defamiliarization, 35, 349
- Delilah, 65
- “Delusions and Dreams in Jensen’s *Gradiva*” (Freud), 55
- demonic other, 209, 216, 349
- denotations, 43, 349
- Derrida, Jacques, 149, 157
 on absence of transcendental signified, 157, 160
 on binary oppositions, 160–162
 on deconstructive analysis, 162
 différance, 159
 on double reading, 163
 on metaphysics of presence, 162
 precursors, 158
- Descartes, René, 150
- development stages (Lacanian), 69
- devil, 63, 64
- diachronic, 152, 349
- dialectical log, 4
- dialectical materialism, 85, 91, 349
- The Dialogic Imagination: Four Essays by M. M. Bakhtin*, 37
- dialogism, 38, 349
- dialogized heteroglossia, 39, 349
- dialogue journal, 5
- “The Diamond Necklace” (Maupassant), 332–338
 deconstructive analysis of, 172–174
 Marxist criticism of, 87–95
- Dickens, Charles, 21
- Dickinson, Emily, 45
- diction, 43
 in African American literature, 223
 in “Araby,” 44
- dictionaries, 12
- différance, 159, 160, 167
 definition of, 349
- difference feminism, 107, 113
 writings of men vs. women, 113, 121
- In a Different Voice* (Gilligan), 107
- Dillard, Annie, 242
- dirty dozen, 221
- “Discourse in the Novel” (Bakhtin), 37
- discourses, 178, 349
 analysis of, 190
 colonial and postcolonial, 207
 history as, 186
 literature as, 185
 power structure and, 180
- displacement, 59, 69, 349
- Donne, John, 45
- Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, 37, 39, 40, 55
- double consciousness, 207, 212
 definition of, 350
 similarities in postcolonial literatures, 215
 W.E.B. DuBois on, 219
- double-entry log, 4
- double reading, 163
- double-voicedness, 220, 350
- Douglass, Frederick, 180
- drama, 20
- dramatic irony, 350
- dreams
 in Freudian theory, 55, 57, 59, 69
 in writing of psychological criticism, 74
- dualistic thinking, 160
- DuBois, W. E. B., 207, 219
- dyadic pairs, 155, 350

E

- The Eatonville Anthology* (Hurst), 220–226
 excerpt from, 318–327
- ecocriticism, 239–253, 345
 choosing an approach, 243
 definitions of, 339, 350
 examining ecocritical issues and questions, 246–248
 examining nature writing, 245
 historical background, 241
 questioning representations of nature, 244
 selecting a text, 243
 student analysis, 251–253
- ecology, first law of, 240
- economic exploitation of women, 115

economic power, in Marxist criticism, 87–90

Écrits (Lacan), 68

l'écriture féminine, 106, 117, 353

effluent stance, 130

ego, 57, 350

Einstein, Albert, 150

Electra complex, 59

Eliot, George, 105

Eliot, T. S., 34, 49

The Waste Land, 65

Ellis, John, 167

Ellison, Ralph, 190

Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 243

Empson, William, 34, 49

engaging the text, 2–5

 adding marginal notations, 3

 keeping a reading log, 3–5

 using heuristics, 5

Engels, Friedrich, 85

English Poetry: A Critical Introduction (Bateson), 18

entertainment, socioeconomic influences of, 92

environment, 350

 influence on writers' work, 15

 nature vs., in ecocriticism, 244

 physical, relationship of literature to, 240

environmental studies programs, 242

epic poetry, 21

Epistemology of the Closet (Sedgwick), 111

episteme, 185, 350

epos, 20

essay questions, 6

essentialism, 110, 350

 challenge to essentialist female, 119

Estok, Simon C., 240

etymology, 43, 350

Eurocentrism, 209, 212

 definition of, 216, 350

European colonial powers, 207

European cultural ideal, 211

Evans, Mary Ann, 105

exaggeration, in African American literature, 224

exchange value, 88, 350

exotic other, 209, 216, 350

explication, 24

explication de texte, 24, 26, 350

F

fables, 221

false consciousness, 82, 351

familiar approach. *See* historical-biographical critical approaches

father, in Lacanian Symbolic Order, 70

Faulkner, William

 "Barn Burning," 14–25, 99–101, 268–280

 personal background, 15

 prose style, 22

 reception of works, 16

Fanon, Frantz, 208

female archetypal characters, 65

The Female Eunuch (Greer), 105

female experience, studies of, 117–119, 122

The Feminine Mystique (Friedan), 105

feminism, 103–109

feminist criticism, 102–128, 344

 developmental stages, 243

 feminism, 103–109

 queer theory, 109–112

 reading as a feminist, 112

 student analysis, 125–128

 studies of difference, 113

 studies of female experience, 117–119

 studies of power, 114–117

 writing, 119–123

feudalism, 88

fibula (story), 36

fiction, 20

figurative language, 24

figures of speech, 45, 351

 deconstructing, 169

Fish, Stanley, 133, 135

Flaubert, Gustave, 65

folktales, 221

folk traditions, 218, 220–223, 351

form, 34, 41. *See also* formalist criticism; genre criticism

 content vs., in Marxist criticism, 93

 effect of, in Marxist criticism, 94

 no form as form, 43

formal academic prose, 7, 8

formalist criticism, 33–52, 344

 diction, 43

 deconstruction vs., 163

 empirical worldview of New Critics, 151

 historical background, 34

- formalist criticism (*continued*)
 limitations of, 47
 Mikhail Bakhtin, 36–39
 questions to start thinking in, 42
 reader–response criticism and, 47, 129
 rejection of historicism, 183
 Russian formalism, 33, 35, 156
 structure, 43
 student analysis of “Richard Cory,” 51
 unity, 45
 what doesn’t appear in, 46
 writing formalist analysis, 47–49
- formatting visually attractive copy, 12
- Foucault, Michel, 184, 186
- fragmented nature of human beings
 (Lacan), 71
- freewriting, 5, 10
- French feminist critics, 117
 use of Lacan’s ideas, 54, 71, 106
- Freud, Sigmund, 54
- Freudian theory, 55–62
 ideas about women, 118
 Lacanian update on, 67–72
 in Marxist criticism, 86
 prewriting psychological criticism, 72
- Friedan, Betty, 105
- Frost, Robert, 7
 “Nothing Gold Can Stay,” 3
 “The Silken Tent,” 45
 “Stopping by the Woods on a Snowy
 Evening,” 162–167, 243–248, 281
- Frye, Northrop, 20, 54
 mythological criticism, 66
- Fuller, Margaret, 243

G

- Gaines, Ernest, 81–83, 187–193
- gardens, in Jungian theory, 66
- Gargantua and Pantagruel* (Rabelais),
- Gates, Henry Louis, 220, 223
- Gaudet, Marcia, 191
- gay and lesbian studies, 109
- gays and lesbians. *See also* queer theory
 challenge to power structure, 176
- Geertz, Clifford, 186
- gender
 in feminist theory, 105, 109
 in Lacanian theory, 70
 and socioeconomic class, 106

- gender studies, 106
- Gender Trouble* (Butler), 110
- Geneva critics, 138, 351
- genre, 19
 definition of, 26, 351
- genre criticism, 19–23
- Gerald, Carolyn, 219
- Gibson, Walter, 130
- Gilbert, Helen, 206
- Gilbert, Sandra, 106
- Gilligan, Carol, 107
- girls, sexual development in Freudian
 theory, 59
- Glotfelty, Cheryll, 240, 241
 on ecocritical issues and questions, 246
 on stages of ecocriticism, 243
- goals, history and, 180
- Gomides, Camilo, 240
- Gordimer, Nadine, 199–203, 228–233
- grammar, 133, 351
- grammar checks (computer), 12
- Gramsci, Antonio, 176
- The Grapes of Wrath* (Steinbeck), 65
- Great Expectations* (Dickens), 21
- Great Society, 187
- Greek orators and rhetoricians, 129
- Greenblatt, Stephen, 180, 184
- Greer, Germaine, 105
- Gubar, Susan, 106
- guilt complex, 58
- Gulf of Mexico, oil spill, 240
- gynocentric, 106
- gynocriticism, 105, 351

H

- The Hamlet* (Faulkner), 17
- Hamlet* (Shakespeare), 56, 62
- Hammon, Jupiter, 217
- handbooks for writers, 7, 12
- Harlem Renaissance, 218
- Hawthorne, Nathaniel
 historical analysis of “Young Goodman
 Brown,” 27–32
 psychological analysis of “Young
 Goodman Brown,” 55–62
 “Young Goodman Brown,” 307–316
 “Hawthorne’s Provincial Tales” (Adams),
 60
- hegemony, 86, 351

- Heidegger, Martin, 158
The Hero: A Study in Tradition, Myth, and Drama, 64
- heroes, 64
- heteroglossia, 38, 351
 dialogized, 39
- heterosexual privilege, 102, 109, 351
- heuristics, prewriting strategies, 5
- hierarchies, deconstructing, 168
- Hirsch, David, 167
- historical-biographical critical approaches, 14–32, 344
 analysis, 24
 comparison and contrast, 24
 effects of genre, 19–23
 explication, 24
 questions to ask as aides to thinking, 19
 social perspective, 14–19
 student historical analysis, 27–32
 study of single author's work, 25
 Web sites, 26
- historical situation, 87, 94, 351
- historicism. *See also* new historicism
 new historicism, 17
 traditional, 178, 183
- Holland, Norman, 135
- homophobia, 109, 351
- hooks, bell, 109
- Hopkins, Gerard Manley, 43
- horizon of expectations, 131, 352
The House of Fiction (Gordon and Tate), 35
Huckleberry Finn, 63, 132
- Hughes, Langston, 233–238
 “I, Too,” 316
- human beings as fragmented and incomplete (Lacan), 71
- Hurston, Zora Neale
The Eatonville Anthology, 318–327
 multicultural criticism of work, 220–226
- hybridity/syncretism, 209, 216
 definition of, 352
 in “The Road from Coorain,” 212
 similarities in postcolonial literatures, 215
- hysteria, 55
- I**
- id, 57, 74, 352
- identity
 in new historicist analysis, 189
- reader, 135
 sexual, 109–112
- ideology, 352
 art, literature, and, 92–95
 in cultural materialism, 183
 in cultural studies, 176
 interrelation with literary form, 86
 in new historicist criticism, 181, 185, 192
 support by literature, in Marxist theory, 85
 of the text, clarifying understanding of, 96
- Idylls of the King* (Tennyson), 64
 “I Like to See It Lap the Miles” (Dickinson), 45
- imagery
 analysis of, 24
 Faulkner's, in “Barn Burning,” 23
 in formalist criticism, 45
 guiding reader response, 133, 136, 140
 in Jungian theory, 65
- images, 45, 352
- Imaginary Order, 70, 352
- implied reader, 137, 352
- India, 207
- indirection, in African American literature, 225
- individuation, 63, 352
- initiation
 in “Araby,” 43, 146–148
 in Jungian theory, 66
- intellectual development of women, 108
- intellectual/emotional binary, 117, 123
- intention, 46
- intentional fallacy, 46, 352
- intentions of author, 187, 193
 Gaines, in “The Sky Is Gray,” 192
Interdisciplinary Studies in Literature and Environment (ISLE), 242
- Internet, reference materials, 12
The Interpretation of Dreams (Freud), 55
- interpellation, 86, 352
- interpretive communities, 135, 352
- Introductory Lectures in Psycho-analysis* (Freud), 56, 61
- Invisible Man* (Ellison), 190
- irony, 45
 in “Araby,” 46
 definition of, 352
 in *The Eatonville Anthology*, 224, 225

Iser, Wolfgang, 131, 137
 “I, Too” (Hughes), 316

J

Jakobson, Roman, 36, 67, 155
 Jackson, Shirley, 64
 Jameson, Fredric, 86
Jane Eyre (Brontë), 208
 Jason, 64
 Jauss, Hans Robert, 131
 Jensen, William, 55
 Jesus Christ, 64
 Johnson, Barbara, 163
 Johnson, James Weldon, 218
 Johnson, Lyndon B., 187
 jokes, 221
 Jones, Ernest, 56
 jouissance, 71, 353
 journals, 5
 journeys, in Jungian theory, 66
 Joyce, James. *See also* “Araby”
 “Araby,” 327–331
 Ulysses, 21
 Jung, Carl, 54, 62–66

K

Das Kapital (Marx), 85
 Karenga, Ron, 220
 Keats, John
 attitude toward women, 103
 “To Autumn,” 78–81, 251–253, 331
 “Ode on a Grecian Urn,” 183
 Kohlberg, Lawrence, 207
 Kristeva, Julia, 71
 “Kubla Khan” (Coleridge), 66

L

Lacan, Jacques, 54
 Lacanian theory, 67–72
 prewriting criticism, 73
 use by French feminist critics, 106, 117
 writing criticism, 75
 Lakoff, Robin, 107
 language
 detachment from reality in Lacanian
 theory, 71
 literary vs. everyday, 35

langue, 153, 155, 156, 353
 “The Laugh of the Medusa” (Cixous),
 118
 Law of the Father (Lacan), 70, 118
 learning log, 4
 l’écriture féminine, 106, 117, 353
 Lee, Don, 220, 226
 Lehman, David, 167
 lesbian feminists, 108, 109. *See also*
 minority feminist critics; queer theory
 Lévi-Strauss, Claude, 67, 155
 lexies, 156, 353
Liberal Imagination (Trilling), 62
 libido, 57, 353
 light greens, 244, 353
 linguistics
 Ferdinand de Saussure, 152–155
 in Lacanian theory, 68
 literary ecology, 239. *See also* ecocriticism
 Locke, Alain, 218
 logocentrism, 160, 162, 166
 definition of, 353
 “A Long Day in November” (Gaines), 189
 “The Lottery” (Jackson), 64
 Lukács, Georg, 85
 Lyons, Nora, 107
 lyric, 20
 lyric poetry, 21

M

Madame Bovary (Flaubert), 65
The Madwoman in the Attic (Gilbert and
 Gubar), 106
 male and female
 anima/animus, 63
 gender and, 110
 in Lacanian theory, 70
 resistance to male norm, 119, 122
 male/female binary, 117, 123
 deconstructionist view of, 160
 manhood, search for, 189
 manner, 20, 26, 353
 Man, Paul de, 162
The Mansion (Faulkner), 17
 marginal elements, making central in
 deconstruction, 165
 marginal notations, 2
 adding, 3
 Marshall, Thurgood, 187

- Marxism
 influence on cultural studies, 177
 influence on new historicism, 185, 186
 and social criticism, 17
 vulgar Marxism, 85
 “Marxism and Literature” (Wilson), 86
 Marxist criticism, 84–101, 344
 art, literature, and ideologies, 92–95
 class conflict, 91
 cultural materialism as outgrowth of, 182
 economic power, 87–90
 historical background, 84–86
 materialism vs. spirituality, 90
 student analysis, “Barn Burning” (Faulkner), 99–101
 writing, 95–97
 Marxist feminist criticism, 106, 109, 115
 Marx, Karl Heinrich, 85, 92
 “The Masque of the Red Death” (Poe), 132–138, 338–342
 masterpieces
 cultural studies view on, 176
 traditional historicist and formalist views on, 183
 material circumstances, 87, 353
 materialism vs. spirituality, in Marxist criticism, 90
 Maupassant, Guy de, 87
 deconstructive analysis of “The Diamond Necklace,” 172–174
 “The Diamond Necklace,” 332–338
 Marxist criticism of “The Diamond Necklace,” 87–95
 means, 19, 26, 353
 Medicare and Medicaid, 187
 Meeker, Joseph, 239
 Mephistopheles, 65
 metaphor, 69
 metaphysics of presence, 162, 353
 metonymy, 69
 Middle East, 206, 207
 milieu, 15, 26, 357
 Miller, J. Hillis, 138, 163, 168
 Millett, Kate, 105
 mimicry, 208
 definition of, 216, 353
 in “The Road from Coorain,” 212
 similarities in postcolonial literatures, 215
 minority feminists, 108
 power relationships of men and women, 115, 117
 mirror stage, 70, 353
 misogyny, 105, 354
 Mississippi, in Faulkner’s works, 16
 “A Modest Proposal” (Swift), 21
 moment, 15, 26, 357
 monologism, 40, 354
 monomyth, 67, 354
 morality principle, 58, 74
 moral problems, male and female approaches to, 107
Morphology of the Folk Tale (Propp), 156
 mother, in Imaginary Order, 70
 motherhood, images of, 117
 motifs, 24, 41, 354
 multiculturalism (U.S.), 217–227, 345
 analysis of a text, 220–226
 African American literature, 217–220
 student analysis of Langston Hughes, 233–238
 writing an analysis, 226
 Murray, Gilbert, 62
 music, African American, 220
 mythemes, 155
 mythoi, 67, 354
 mythologic pattern, 43
 mythological criticism, 344
 Carl Jung and, 62–66
 Northrop Frye and, 66
 prewriting criticism, 73
 student analysis of “To Autumn” (Keats), 78–81
 writing, 75
Mythologies (Barthes), 156
 myths, 54
 definition of, 354
 structuralist study of, 155
- N**
- Naipaul, V. S., 215
 narrative forms, 221
 narrative functions, 157, 354
 narratology, 156, 354
 national characteristics, 15, 25
 nativism (nationalism), in postcolonial literature, 211
Native Son (Baldwin), 190

- nature
 definition, in ecocriticism, 244, 354
 progressions of, 62
 relationship of literature to, 240
 representations of, 243
Nature (Emerson), 243
 nature writing, 241, 243
 ecocritical analysis of, 245
- negotiation
 definition of, 216, 354
 in “The Road from Coorain,” 213
The Negro Digest, 220
- neocolonialism, 204, 206, 209, 354
- New Criticism, 33–35. *See also* formalist criticism
 empirical worldview, 151
 use of explication, 24
- new historicism, 17, 177–203, 345
 assumptions, principles, and goals, 177–181
 discourses in the text, 190–192
 historical background, 183–186
 intentions of author and reception of work, 192
 literary, 181–183
 questions to ask in analysis, 190
 student analysis, 199–203
 world of author and the text, 187–190
 writing literary analysis, 193–197
The New Negro (Locke), 218
- New Zealand, 205, 206
- Nietzsche, Friedrich, 54, 150, 158
- on absolute truth and objective knowledge, 184
- notations, marginal. *See* marginal notations
- “Nothing Gold Can Stay” (Frost), 3
- numbers in Jungian theory, 65
- O**
- objective correlative, 34
- objective/subjective binary, 109, 123
 empirical view of reality, 149–151
 in reader-response criticism, 135
- objects, 20, 26, 353
- “Ode on a Grecian Urn” (Keats), 183
- Oedipal attachment, 54, 58, 107
 definition of, 354
 in *Hamlet*, 56
- Oedipus, 64
- Oedipus Rex* (Sophocles), 21, 58
- Oklahoma City bombing, 206
- oil spill in Gulf of Mexico, 240
- “Once Upon a Time” (Gordimer), 302–307
 new historicist criticism, 199–203
 postcolonial criticism, 228–233
- oral phase, 58
- oral tradition, 189
- orders (Lacanian), 69
- Orestes, 62
- Orientalism* (Said), 206
- other, 70, 355
 attitudes toward, in postcolonial literature, 207
 colonized people, 206, 216
 in new historicist criticism, 180
 in feminist criticism, 105, 106
- othering, 209, 216
- Other (Lacanian theory), 70, 71, 355
- “Of Our Spiritual Strivings” (DuBois), 219
- outcast, 64
- P**
- paradox, 45, 355
 in “Araby,” 46
 in deconstruction, 169
- paraphrase, 46, 355
- parody, 223, 224, 355
- parole*, 153, 155
- patriarchal, 102, 355
- performative, 110, 119, 355
- persona, 63, 355
- personal conscious, 62, 355
- personal unconscious, 62, 355
- personal writing journal, 5
- phallic stage, 58
- phallic symbols, 60, 118, 356
- phenomenological critics, 151, 356
- phenomenologist, 137, 356
- phonocentrism, 161, 162, 356
- Pierce, Charles Sanders, 154
- place
 Faulkner’s Yoknapatawpha County, 16
 influence on literature, 15
- Plato, 129
- Platonic forms, 160
- pleasure principle, 57, 74

- plot
 analysis of, 24
 story vs., in Russian formalism, 36
- Poe, Edgar Allen
 prose controlling reader response, 133
 “The Masque of the Red Death,”
 132–138, 338–342
- poetics, 35, 356
Poetics (Aristotle), 19
- poetry
 African American, 226, 233–238
 Bakhtin’s assessment of, 39
 contemporary, and formalist
 criticism, 47
 social criticism, 18
Poetry and Dreams (Prescott), 55
 Poets for Living Waters, 240
 point of view, 41, 45
 deconstructive analysis, 169
 definition of, 356
 finding your own, in research papers, 7
 resistance to male and heterosexual
 norm, 119
- political statement and innuendo, in
 postcolonial criticism, 214
- political unconscious, 86
- polyphonic, 39, 356
- polyrhythms, 226, 356
- Pool, Rosey, 219
- poor, feminism and, 108
- Pope, Alexander, 103
- Porch Talk* (Gaudet and Wooton), 191
- postcolonialism, 204–207
 definition of, 216, 356
 historical background, 205–207
- postcolonial literary criticism, 207–216,
 345
 basic assumptions, 208
 context, 213
 definition of, 216, 356
 expressions of nativism, 211
 minor characters, 214
 political statement and innuendo, 214
 presentation of colonialism, 209
 recurring subjects and themes, 212
 similarities in postcolonial literatures,
 215
 student analysis, 228–233
 treatment of characters, 210
 validity of the narrative, 211
- postcolonial literature, 205, 217, 356
 “Post-colonial Literatures and
 Counter-discourse” (Tiffin), 207
- poststructuralism, 149, 158. *See also*
 deconstruction
 definition of, 357
 Marxist criticism and, 86
- poverty, 187
- power, 357
 in cultural studies, 176
 economic, in Marxist theory, 88–90
 feminist studies of, 114–117, 122
 male power, in Lacanian theory, 70
 of males, in patriarchy, 105
 in new historicist literary criticism, 181
- preacher tales, 221
- Prescott, F. C., 55
- presence/absence binary, 161, 166
- presentation, computer aids for, 12
- prewriting strategies, 5, 10
 deconstructive analysis, 168
 formalist analyses, 47
 Marxist analyses, 95
 new historicist literary criticism, 199
 reader-response analyses, 138
- Problems of Dostoyevsky’s Poetics* (Bakhtin),
 37, 40
- production theory, 86, 357
- progress
 in new historicism, 178, 180
 in traditional historicism, 178
- projection, 63
- proletariat, 87, 91, 357
- Propp, Vladimir, 156
- psyche, tripartite, in Freudian theory, 57
- psychobiography, 56, 61, 357
- psychological criticism, 53–83, 344
 analysis of “The Sky is Gray” (Gaines),
 81–83
 Carl Jung and mythological criticism,
 62–66
 Freudian principles, 55–62
 Jacques Lacan, update on Freud,
 67–72
 mythological analysis of “To Autumn”
 (Keats), 78–81
 Northrop Frye and mythological
 criticism, 66
 websites on psychological approaches, 77
 writing, 72–76

psychological damage from capitalism, 88
 psychology, explaining reading process,
 135
 “Pure and Impure Poetry” (Warren), 46
 purpose
 determining for writing, 6
 effect on voice, 9
 Purser, John, 35

Q

queer theory, 102, 109–112
 resistance to heterosexual point of view,
 119
 study of female experience, 119
 writing criticism, 120
 questions
 essay, 6
 answering unanswered question, 10
 quest stories
 “Araby,” 43, 66
 in Jungian theory, 64, 66

R

Rabelais, François, 40
Rabelais and His World (Bakhtin), 37
 race, 15, 26, 357
 racial discrimination, 188
 racial segregation, 187
 racism, 108
 Raglan, Lord (FitzRoy Richard Somerset),
 64
 Ransom, John Crowe, 34, 49
 rational/emotional binary, 109, 118
 reader-response criticism, 129–148, 345
 historical background, 129–132
 interacting with the text, 132
 reader acting on the text, 135–137
 text acting on the reader, 133–135
 transactional model, 137
 writing an analysis, 138–141
The Reader, the Text, the Poem
 (Rosenblatt), 130
 reading
 conventional ways of, 14
 effects of genre, 19–23
 social perspective, 14–19
 reading and writing, relationship of, 1–13
 choosing a voice, 9

 determining purpose and understanding
 forms of response, 6–8
 engaging the text, 2–5
 helping the process, 9–11
 knowing your audience, 8
 reference materials, 12
 shaping a response, 5
 reading log, 2, 3–5
 audience for, 8
 noting quality of language, 44
 questions about unity, 45
 for reader-response analysis, 139
 reality principle, 57, 74
 reality, objective vs. subjective nature of,
 149–151
 Real Order, 69, 118, 357
 receptionists, 16, 26
 reception of work, 192
 reception theory, 131, 357
 reference materials, 12
 reflectionism, 85, 357
 reflectionist, 85, 89, 357
 relativity, 150
 representations of nature, 243
 analyzing in ecocriticism, 244
The Reproduction of Mothering (Chodorow),
 107
 research papers, 7–9
 audience for, 8
 writer’s voice, 9
 revision, collaborative, 11
 rhetoric, 12
 rhetorical devices guiding reader response,
 129, 133–135
 rhymes, in African American literature,
 224
 “Richard Cory” (Robinson), 51, 342
 Richards, I. A., 34, 49, 130
 “The Rime of the Ancient Mariner”
 (Coleridge), 63, 64
The Road from Coorain (Conway),
 257–267
 feminist criticism of, 125–128
 postcolonialist analysis of, 209–215
 Robinson, Edwin Arlington, 51, 342
 Rodgers, Carolyn, 226
A Room of One’s Own (Woolf), 104
 Rosenblatt, Louise, 130, 131, 137
 Roustang, Francois, 71
 Royle, Nicholas, 208

- Rueckert, William, 239
- Russian formalism, 33, 35
 definition of, 358
 Vladimir Propp, 156
- Ryle, Gilbert, 186
- S**
- Said, Edward, 206
- Samson and Delilah, 65
- Sanctuary* (Faulkner), 17
- Sanford, John, 63
- sardonic comedy, 225, 358
- Satan, 63
- satire, 221, 225, 358
- Sausurre, Ferdinand de, 67, 68
 Russian formalism and, 35
 structuralist approach to linguistics,
 152–155
- Sauvy, Alfred, 205
- scapegoat, 64
- school desegregation, 187
- schools of literary criticism, mixture of, 86
- seasons, cycle of, 42, 43, 66
 analysis of “To Autumn” (Keats),
 79–81
 myths of seasons, 67
 secondary sources, 7
The Second Sex (Beauvoir), 105
- Sedgwick, Eve Kosofsky, 110
- segregation, racial, 187
- self-analysis in reader-response criticism,
 131, 135
- self, concept of
 deconstructionist view of, 163
 Lacan), 68, 69
- self-positioning, 179, 358
- semiology, 154, 358
- semiotics, 154
- sex
 in feminist theory, 105
 in Lacanian theory, 70
- sexual identity, 109–112, 120
 deconstruction and, 109
 essentialist vs. social constructionist
 theories, 110
- sexuality, in Freudian theory, 58, 60
- sexual practices, 111
- Sexual Politics* (Millet), 105
- shadow, 63, 358
- “Shakespeare and Ecocriticism” (Estok),
 240
- Shakespeare, William
 Freudian analysis of work, 55
Hamlet, 56
- Shapard, David M., 18
- Showalter, Elaine, 104–106, 243
- signification, warring, in deconstructive
 analysis, 163
- signified, 68, 153
 in deconstruction, 160
 definition of, 358
- signifier, 68, 153
 in deconstruction, 159
 definition of, 358
- signifying (signifyin’), 218, 223, 224
 definition of, 358
- The Signifying Monkey* (Gates), 220, 223,
 358
- sign(s), 68, 153
 in deconstruction, 159
 definition of, 358
- Signs of the Times: Deconstruction and the Fall
 of Paul de Man* (Lehman), 167
- sign value, 88, 358
- “The Silken Tent” (Frost), 45
- “The Sky is Gray” (Gaines), 281–302
 new historicist analysis of, 187–193
 psychological analysis of, 81–83
- szuzhet* (plot), 36
- slave narratives, 180
- slavery, 88, 208
- slave trade, 208
- social constructivism, 110, 358
- social criticism, 14–19
 modern schools of, 17
- Socialist Realism, 359
- Socratic irony, 359
- Somerset, FitzRoy Richard
 (Lord Raglan), 64
- Sophocles, 21, 58
- The Souls of Black Folk* (DuBois), 219
- The Sound and the Fury* (Faulkner), 16
- sources, 7
 list of, 8
- South, and Faulkner’s works, 15, 16
- Soviet Writers’ Union, 85
- Spears, Brian, 240
- speech/writing binary, 161, 166
- spelling checks (computer), 12

- spheres of action, 157, 359
 spirit of an age, 178, 179
 spirituality vs. materialism, in Marxist criticism, 89
 “Spotted Horses” (Faulkner), 25
 spring myth, 67
 Sri Lanka, 207
 Staël, Madame de, 103
 Stalin, Joseph, 85
 stance of reader toward text, 130
 Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 105
 Steinbeck, John Ernst, Jr., 65
 stereotypes
 of nature, 243
 of women, 106, 112, 120
 “Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening” (Frost), 281
 deconstructive analysis of, 162–167
 ecocritical analysis of, 243–248
 story vs. plot, in Russian formalism, 36
 structuralism, 149, 151–158
 Claude Lévi-Strauss, 155
 deconstruction’s extension of, 157
 definition of, 359
 Ferdinand de Saussure, 152–155
 Jonathan Culler, 157
 Roland Barthes, 156
 Vladimir Propp, 156
Structuralist Poetics (Culler), 157
 structuralists, 133
 structure, 38, 42, 359
 structures
 in deconstructive analysis, 157, 167
 in structuralism, 152, 153, 156
Studies in Hysteria (Freud and Breuer), 55
 style, in African American literature, 224
 subaltern, 176, 216, 359
 subjective knowledge, 135
 of history, 178
 subjects, 176, 359
Summer on the Lakes, in 1843 (Fuller), 243
 summer myth, 67
 sun, in Jungian theory, 66
The Sunshine Boys, 21
 superego, 57, 74, 359
 superman (*Übermensch*), 150, 360
 superstition, in African American literature, 225
 superstructure, 89, 90, 359
 supplementation, 161, 165, 359
Surprised by Sin (Fish), 133
 Swift, Jonathan, 21
 Symbolic Order, 70, 106, 118
 definition of, 359
 symbols, 24
 definition of, 43, 359
 in Freudian theory, 60
 in writing psychological theory, 75
 synchronic, 152, 360
 syncretism. *See* hybridity/syncretism
- ## T
- Taine, Hippolyte, 15, 26
 tall tales, 221
 Tate, Allen, 34, 35, 45, 50
Teacher’s Introduction to Deconstruction (Crowley), 162
 technological assistance for writers, 12
Tendencies (Sedgwick), 110
 Tennyson, Alfred, 64
 tension, 45, 46, 48
 definition of, 360
 Tertullian, 103
 textual criticism, 21, 26, 360
 thesis statement, 23
Theory of Literature, 15
 thick description, 186, 360
 Third World, 205
 Thoreau, Henry David, 243
 Thurber, James, 103
 Tiffin, Helen, 207
 Till Eulenspiegel, 65
 Tolstoy, Lyev Nikolayevich (Leo), 40
 Tompkins, Jane, 167
 Tompkins, Joanne, 206
The Town (Faulkner), 17
 trace, 159, 360
 traditional historicism, 178, 183
 Transactional analysis, 132, 360
 transactional model, 137
 questions to direct thinking, 138
 transcendental signified, 160, 162, 360
 trickster, 65, 218, 223
 trickster stories, 221
 Trilling, Lionel, 61
 tripartite psyche, 57

- truth
 deconstructionist view of, 160, 162
 new historians' view of, 178
- Twain, Mark, 63, 132
- U**
- Übermensch*, 150, 360
- Ulysses* (Joyce), 21
- Unconscious
 in Freudian theory, 56
 in Lacanian theory, 67–69
 personal unconscious in Jungian theory, 62
 political, 86
- Understanding Drama* (Brooks), 35
- Understanding Fiction* (Brooks), 35
- Understanding Poetry* (Brooks), 35
- unfinalizability, 38, 360
- unhomeliness, 207, 217
 definition of, 360
 in “The Road from Coorain,” 212
- unity, 44, 45
 definition of, 361
 of the psyche, 68
- universalism, 208, 217, 361
- usefulness, 88, 90
- use value, 88, 361
- V**
- “A Valediction Forbidding Mourning” (Donne), 45
- Verbal Icon* (Wimsatt and Beardsley), 47
- A Vindication of the Rights of Women* (Wollstonecraft), 103
- vocabulary journal, 5
- voice, choosing, 9
- vulgar Marxism, 85, 361
- W**
- Walden* (Thoreau), 243
- Walpole, Horace, 104
- War on Poverty, 187
- Warren, Austin, 15
- Warren, Robert Penn, 34, 35, 46
- The Waste Land* (Eliot), 65
- Water, in Jungian theory, 65
- Wellek, René, 15, 36
- weltanschauung*, 85, 361
- Western Literature Association (WLA), 241
- West, Mae, 103
- “what if” journal, 5
- Wheatley, Phyllis, 217
- White, Hayden, 179
- white women feminists, 108
- Whitman, Walt, 21
- why stories, 221
- Williams, Raymond, 241
- Wilson, Edmund, 61, 86
- Wimsatt, W. K., Jr., 47, 50
- “The Windhover” (Hopkins), 43
- winter myth, 67
- Wollstonecraft, Mary, 103
- women
 challenges to power structure, 176
 depiction as archetypal characters, 65
 inferiority of, in Western culture, 103
 roles and power in different countries, 108
 stereotyping in patriarchal literature, 105
- women of color, minority feminists, 108
- women's history, 104
- women's studies, 106
- Women's Ways of Knowing* (Belenky et al.), 108
- Woolf, Virginia, 104, 114
- Wootton, Carl, 191
- Wordsworth, William, 21, 53
- The Wound and the Bow*, 61
- Wright, Richard, 218
- writing
 analysis, 24
 answering essay questions, 6
 choosing a voice, 9
 collaboration, 10
 comparison and contrast, 24
 determining purpose, 6
 engaging the text, 3–5
 explication, 24
 helping the process, 9
 knowing your audience, 8
 prewriting strategies, 5
 reference materials, 12

writing (*continued*)
 relationship to reading, 1
 research papers, 7
 study of single author's works, 25
 working alone, 11
writing groups, 11
writing journal, personal, 5
writing/speech binary, 161, 166

Y

Yoknapatawpha County (Mississippi), 16
yonic symbols, 60, 361
“Young Goodman Brown” (Hawthorne),
 307–316
 historical analysis of, 27–32
 psychological analysis of, 55–62, 64, 65

CENGAGE **brain**.com

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com

Licensed to:

Copyright 2011 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE **brain**.com

